# HP 3000/iX Network Planning and Configuration Guide

HP 3000 MPE/iX Computer Systems

**Edition 4** 



36922-90037 E1098

Printed in: U.S.A. October 1998

### Notice

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

Hewlett-Packard makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this material, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Hewlett-Packard shall not be liable for errors contained herein or for direct, indirect, special, incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing or use of this material.

Hewlett-Packard assumes no responsibility for the use or reliability of its software on equipment that is not furnished by Hewlett-Packard.

This document contains proprietary information which is protected by copyright. All rights reserved. Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

#### **Restricted Rights Legend**

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the U.S. Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c) (1) (ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013. Rights for non-DOD U.S. Government Departments and Agencies are as set forth in FAR 52.227-19 (c) (1,2).

#### Acknowledgments

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Hewlett-Packard Company 3000 Hanover Street Palo Alto, CA 94304 U.S.A.

© Copyright 1991, 1992, 1994 and 1998 by Hewlett-Packard Company

1.	Network Configuration Overview	
	Pre-Configuration Hardware Check	. 18
	Pre-Configuration Software check	. 19
	Configuration Process Overview	. 20
2.	Networking Concepts	
	Network Environment Design Considerations	. 22
	Line Speed.	. 22
	Geographical Location	. 22
	Special Cases	. 23
	Shared Dial Links	. 23
	Non-HP 3000 Nodes (Including PCs)	. 23
	Applicable SYSGEN Parameters	. 23
	Dynamic Ldevs	. 24
	Network Interface and Link Types.	. 25
	Number of Network Interfaces	. 25
	Priority of Network Interfaces	. 26
	Subnetworks	. 27
	Why Use Subnets?	. 27
	How Subnetting Works	. 27
	Assigning Subnet Masks	. 27
	Internetworks	. 31
	Gateways	. 31
	Full Gateways versus Gateway Halves	. 31
	Gateway Configuration Overview	. 32
	Identifying Neighbor Gateways	. 32
	Neighbor Gateway Examples	. 32
	Configuring a Gateway Half Pair	. 33
	Address Resolution	. 35
	Domain Name Services	. 35
	Network Directory	. 35
	When a Network Directory is Required	. 36
	Planning the Network Directory	. 36
	Copying and Merging Network Directory Files	. 37
	Probe and Probe Proxy	. 38
	Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)	. 38
	Enabling Probe and ARP	. 38
	Network Design Questions	. 39
	Software Configuration Maximums	. 41
3.	Planning Your Network	
	Drawing an Internetwork Map	. 44
	Communication Between Networks	. 45
	Network Boundaries.	. 46
	IP Network Addresses	. 46
	Completing the Internetwork Table	. 47
	Drawing a Network Map	. 48
	Network Worksheets	. 49

LAN Network Worksheets	49
LAN Network Map	49
LAN Network Table	50
LAN Internet Routing Table	51
Token Ring Network Worksheets	51
FDDI Network Worksheets	51
100VG-AnyLAN Network Worksheets	51
100Base-T Network Worksheets	51
Point-to-Point Network Worksheets	52
Point-to-Point Network Map	52
Point-to-Point Network Table	53
Point-to-Point Internet Routing Table	53
X.25 Network Worksheets	55
X.25 Network Map	55
X.25 Network Table	56
X.25 Internet Routing Table	56
Gateway Half Pair Worksheets	57
Gateway Half Map	57
Gateway Half Network Interface Table	58
Network Directory Worksheet.	59

### 4. Planning for Node Configuration

Node Worksheet Information	62
LAN Configuration Worksheet	69
Token Ring Configuration Worksheet	70
FDDI Configuration Worksheet	71
100VG-AnyLAN Configuration Worksheet	72
100Base-T Configuration Worksheet	73
Point-to-Point Configuration Worksheet	74
X.25 Configuration Worksheet	75
X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration Worksheet	76
Neighbor Gateway Worksheet Information	77
Neighbor Gateway Configuration Worksheet	78
Neighbor Gateway Reachable networks Worksheet Information	79
Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks Configuration Worksheet	80

### 5. Introductory Screens

To Begin the Configuration Process			 •	 82
To Start NMMGR			 •	 82
To Open the Configuration File			 •	 82
To Select NS Configuration			 •	 85
To Select Guided Configuration			 •	 87
Guided/Unguided Configuration			 •	 87
To Perform Guided Network Transport Configuration			 •	 88

6.	Configuring a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node
	To Configure a LAN Network Interface
	To Configure a Token Ring Network Interface
	To Configure an FDDI Network Interface
	To Configure a 100VG-AnyLAN Network Interface
	To Configure a 100Base-T Network Interface
	To Configure Neighbor Gateways 115
	To Identify Neighbor Gateways (If Any Are Present) 115
	To Identify Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks 117
7.	Configuring a Point-to-Point Node
	To Configure a Point-to-Point Network Interface
	To Configure Neighbor Gateways 127
	To Identify Neighbor Gateways (If Any Are Present) 127
	To Identify Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks 129
	To Configure Node Mapping 131
	To Select a Node Mapping Screen
	To Configure Shared Dial Node Mapping 132
	To Configure Direct Connect/Dial Node Mapping 134
8.	Configuring an X.25 Node
	To Configure an X.25 Network Interface
	To Configure X.25 Virtual Circuits
	To Configure Neighbor Gateways 147
	To Identify Neighbor Gateways (If Any Are Present) 147
	To Identify Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks
9.	Configuring a Gateway Half
	To Configure a Gatehalf Network Interface
10.	Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN
	To Validate the Network Transport 158
	To Cross-Validate in SYSGEN 159
11.	Configuring the Network Directory
	To Open the Network Directory 162
	To Select the Update Directory Function
	To Add Nodes to the Network Directory File
	To Configure Path Report Data for a Node
12.	Configuring Domain Name Files
	To Create or Modify the Resolver File 174
	To Create or Modify the Hosts File 176

	Additional Domain Name Configuration Files.	178
	Network Name Database	178
	Protocol Name Database	178
	Service Name Database	. 178
13.	Configuring Logging	
	To Access the Logging configuration Screens.	181
	To Modify the Logging Configuration	182
	To Enable Users for Individual Logging Classes	191
	To Activate Logging	193
	10 Hothate 2056mg	100
14	Operating the Network	
14.	To Start Links and Samions	106
	To Start Links and Services	100
		190
	10 Start a Link	196
	10 Start a Host-Based X.25 Link	196
	To Start the Network Services	. 197
	To Test the Network Services	. 198
	To Shut Down the Network Services	. 199
А.	MPE/V to MPE/iX Migration	
	Differences Between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX	202
	Differences in the Network	202
	Differences in Configuration Files	202
	Differences in Applications Support	203
	Difference in How to Obtain Status Information	203
	Migration Overview	204
	Before You Start	204
	File Migration Tasks	204
	Additional Migration Considerations	204
	File Conversion Guidelines	205
	When you Need to Convert Files	205
	To Convert Files	205
	To Update From a Previous MPE/iX Version	207
	Reconfiguration Guidelines	208
	0	
B.	NS X 25 Migration: NS 3000/XL Releases 1.0, 1.1, or 1.2 to NS 30	00/iX
ь.	Release 2.0 or Later	00/121
	To Convert NS 3000/XL 1 X to 2 0 Files	210
		~10
C	NG V 97 M	
U.	INS A.23 Milgration: INS 3000/V to INS 3000/IX Release 2.0 of Lat	er 010
	Differences between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/IX	. 212
	Differences in Hardware	. 212
	Unsupported Network Connections.	212
	Differences in Configuration of Terminals and Printers	. 212
	Differences in Configuration Files.	. 213
	Differences in Network Services	. 213
	To Obtain Device Status Information	213

	Differences in X.25 Support	. 214
	1980 Versus 1984 CCITT	. 214
	General Level 3 Differences	. 214
	Level 3 Access with NetIPC	. 214
	Facilities	. 215
	Security	. 215
	Pad Support	. 216
	To Convert NS 3000/V Files to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later	. 217
	To Delete Secondary NIs (NS/iX Rel. 2.2 or later)	. 217
	To Save NS 3000/V X.25 Parameters	. 218
	To Copy NS 3000/V Configuration Files to NS 3000/iX System	. 219
	To Use NMMGRVER	. 220
	To Update X.25 XL System Access Parameters	. 220
	To Save X.25 XL System Access Parameters on the Host	. 221
	To Add Other Link Types as Needed	. 221
	To Verify DTS Configuration on the Host	. 221
	To Configure the DTC	. 222
	5	
D.	NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V and NS 3000/XL Release 1.X to i	X
	Release 2.0 or later	
	Differences Between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX	. 224
	Differences in Hardware	. 224
	Unsupported Network Connections.	. 224
	Differences in Configuration of Terminals and Printers	. 224
	Differences in Configuration Files	. 225
	Differences in Network Services	. 225
	To Obtain Device Status Information	. 225
	Differences in X.25 Support	. 226
	1980 vs. 1984 CCITT	. 226
	General Level 3 Differences	. 226
	Level 3 Access with NetIPC	. 226
	Facilities	. 227
	Security	. 227
	PAD Support	. 228
	To Convert MPE V-Based Server Files to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or	r later
	229	
	To Delete Secondary NIs (NS/XL Release 2.2 or later)	. 230
	To Save NS 3000/V X.25 Parameters	. 231
	To Copy NS 3000/V Configuration Files to NS 3000/iX System	. 232
	To Use NMMGRVER	. 233
	To Update X.25 XL System Access Parameters	. 233
	To Save X.25 XL System Access Parameters on the Host	. 234
	To Add Other Link Types as Needed	. 234
	To Verify DTS Configuration on the Host	. 234
	To Configure the DTC	. 235

E.	NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V PAD Access to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0
	or Later
	Differences Between NS3000/V and NS3000/iX PAD Support 238
	To Migrate from NS 3000/V PAD Access to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or later

10 Migrate Hollins 5000/V FAD Access to NS 5000/1X Release 2.0 01 later
239
If You are Using Host-Based Network Management
If You are Using PC-Based Network Management
To Save NS 3000/V PAD Parameters
PAD Access Migration Categories
Non-Nailed Devices
Nailed Devices
Configuration of Nailed Versus Non-Nailed Devices
To Save DTS Parameters on the Host
To Configure the DTC 241

#### Glossary

Index

# Figures

Figure 2-1.	Class C Address with Subnet Number (Example 1)	28
Figure 2-2.	Class C Address with Subnet Number (Example 2)	29
Figure 2-3.	Gateway Configuration Scenarios.	33
Figure 3-1.	Internetwork Map	45
Figure 3-2.	LAN Network Map	50
Figure 3-3.	Point-to-Point Network Map	52
Figure 3-4.	X.25 Network Map	55
Figure 3-5.	Gateway-Half Map	58
Figure 4-1.	LAN Configuration	69
Figure 4-2.	Token Ring Configuration	70
Figure 4-3.	FDDI Configuration.	71
Figure 4-4.	100VG-AnyLAN Configuration	72
Figure 4-5.	100Base-T Configuration.	73
Figure 4-6.	Point-to-Point Configuration	74
Figure 4-7.	X.25 Configuration.	75
Figure 4-8.	X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration	76
Figure 4-9.	Neighbor Gateway Configuration	78
Figure 4-10	. Reachable Network Configuration	80
Figure 5-1.	NMMGR Screen Flow	81
Figure 5-2.	Open Configuration/Directory File Screen	83
Figure 5-3.	Main Screen	85
Figure 5-4.	NS Configuration Screen.	87
Figure 5-5.	Network Transport Configuration Screen	88
Figure 6-1.	Configuring Screen Flow	91
Figure 6-2.	LAN Configuration Screen	93
Figure 6-3.	Token Ring Configuration Screen	98
Figure 6-4 .	FDDI Configuration Screen	02
Figure 6-5.	100VG-AnyLAN Configuration Screen	06
Figure 6-6 .	100Base-T Configuration Screen	10
Figure 6-7.	Neighbor Gateways Screen	16
Figure 6-8.	Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks Screen	17
Figure 7-1.	Point-to-Point Link Configuration Screen Flow1	21
Figure 7-2.	Point-to-Point Link Configuration Screen1	23
Figure 7-3.	Neighbor Gateway Screen	28
Figure 7-4.	Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks	29
Figure 7-5.	Shared Dial Node Mapping Configuration Screen	32
Figure 7-6.	Direct Connect/Dial Node Mapping Configuration Screen	35
Figure 7-7.	Using an @ for Mapping Non-Adjacent Nodes1	36
Figure 8-1.	X.25 Link Screen Flow	37
Figure 8-2.	NS Configuration Screen	39
Figure 8-3.	X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration Screen	43
Figure 8-4.	Neighbor Gateways Screen	48
Figure 8-5.	Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks Screen	49
Figure 9-1.	Gateway Half Link Screen Flow	51
Figure 9-2.	Gatehalf Configuration Screen	53
Figure 11-1	. Network Directory Configuration Screen Flow	61
Figure 11-2	. Open Configuration/Directory File1	62
Figure 11-3	. Network Directory Main	64
Figure 11-4	. Network Directory Select Node Name	66

# Figures

Figure 11-5 . Network Directory Data	169
Figure 12-1 . Sample Resolver Configuration File	175
Figure 12-2 . Sample Hosts Configuration File	177
Figure 13-1 . Logging Configuration Screen Flow	179
Figure 13-2 . Netxport Log Configuration (1) Screen	182
Figure 13-3 . Netxport Log Configuration (2) Screen	183
Figure 13-4 . Netxport Log Configuration (3) Screen	185
Figure 13-5 . Netxport Log Configuration (4) Screen	186
Figure 13-6 . Netxport Log Configuration (5) Screen	187
Figure 13-7 . Netxport Log Configuration (6) Screen	189
Figure 13-8 . Logging Configuration: Class Data Screen	191

# Tables

Table 2-1. Valid Addresses of Example Subnetwork       30	)
Table 2-2. Configuration Maximums.	L
Table 3-1. Internetwork Table	1
Table 3-2. LAN Network Table	)
Table 3-3. LAN Internet Routing Table    51	l
Table 3-4. Point-to-Point Network Table       53	3
Table 3-5. Point-to-Point Internet Routing Table       54	ł
Table 3-6. X.25 Network Table         56	3
Table 3-7. X.25 Internet Routing Table	1
Table 3-8. Gateway Half Network Interface Table.    58	3
Table 3-9. Network Directory Information Table	)
Table 4-1. Configuration Worksheet Information.       62	2
Table 11-1. Path Type Configuration	2
Table 13-1. Subsystem Activation/Deactivation.       193	3

# **Network Configuration Overview**

This manual provides step-by-step instructions you can use to configure an HP 3000 node for network communications. You can use the information to configure an IEEE 802.3/Ethernet, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T, Point-to-Point (router), or X.25 node.

Before you begin configuration, you must ensure your network is physically set up and ready for network configuration.

This chapter provides information you should know before you begin configuration. It tells you what preparations you must make and what items you will be configuring.

This chapter contains the following configuration information:

• Pre-configuration hardware check.

1

- Pre-configuration software check.
- Configuration process overview.

# **Pre-Configuration Hardware Check**

Hardware Check Before you begin the actual configuration process, check that the hardware components required for NS 3000/iX have been installed and verified according to the procedures in the hardware installation manuals listed in the preface to this guide.

# **Pre-Configuration Software check**

Once you have verified that your hardware has been correctly installed, verify that the appropriate software is installed by performing the following steps:

- 1. Ensure that the Datacommunications and Terminal Subsystem (DTS) has been configured. If DTS has not been configured, refer to *Configuring Systems for Terminals, Printers, and Other Serial Devices* and configure the DTS before proceeding.
- 2. Check that the data communications software has been installed properly by running the NMMAINT program (NMMAINT.PUB.SYS), which is supplied as part of the node management services. NMMAINT will tell you if any software modules are missing or invalid. See the *Using the Node Management Services (NMS) Utilities* manual for a discussion of the NMMAINT program.
- 3. Whenever you receive a new version of the node management services (NMS) software (which includes NMMGR), and you have earlier versions of NMS, you first have to run a conversion program. The conversion program, called NMMGRVER (NMMGRVER.PUB.SYS), ensures that configuration files created with an earlier version of NMMGR are converted to the latest format.

# **Configuration Process Overview**

Configuration Process Overview. The instructions in this guide explain how to configure each node on your network by using a "guided" branch of Hewlett-Packard's NMMGR configuration program. The principal steps in this process are as follows:

- 1. Plan your network before you begin NMMGR. Use the worksheets provided in Chapter 4, "Planning for Node Configuration," to record all the items NMMGR requires. (See Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts," for information on networking concepts.)
- 2. Configure the transport and link by using NMMGR to modify the NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS file. The instructions for this step are contained in this manual.
- 3. If the node being configured is part of an internet or is on a network with non-HP nodes, add the path of the new node to its network directory file. See Chapter 11, "Configuring the Network Directory," for information on configuring the network directory.
- 4. Validate the network transport. This step checks data consistency between values entered on different NMMGR data entry screens. Instructions for validating the network transport are located in Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN."
- 5. Cross-validate NMCONFIG. PUB. SYS with the system configuration files within SYSGEN. Cross-validation ensures that there are no conflicts in the use of node names, device classes, and physical paths. Even if validation and cross-validation were already done after configuring DTS, you still have to validate and cross-validate again after you configure the network transport and link. Instructions for cross-validating are located in Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN."
- 6. Start the network (links and services) using the **NETCONTROL** and **NSCONTROL** commands. See Chapter 14, "Operating the Network," for information on starting links and services.
- 7. Verify the configuration and network connectivity by running the QVALNS program. See Chapter 14, "Operating the Network," for information on running QVALNS.

# **Networking Concepts**

Planning a network or internetwork (collection of networks) is an important process that must be done with care to ensure that the network meets the needs of your organization. Many factors must be taken into consideration when planning the network or internetwork: for example, volume of usage over particular links, volume of CPU usage of each node, physical layout needs and limitations (such as geographical distances), and desirability of connections to non-NS 3000/iX nodes.

This chapter provides information to help you design your network and plan for configuration using NMMGR. The following network design elements are discussed:

- Design considerations of the network environment.
- Network interface and link types.
- Subnetworks.
- Internetworks.
- Address resolution methods.
  - Domain names.
  - Network design questions.
  - Probe and probe proxy.
  - Address Resolution Protocol (ARP).
- Network directory.

# Network Environment Design Considerations

Network and internetwork design must take many factors into consideration: the desired physical location of the computers comprising the network, the volume of projected communications traffic between nodes, communications traffic patterns, and the possibility of connections to other types of nodes (such as those in a public data network) are just some of the criteria to consider.

These factors will affect your choice of NS network type (LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T, Point-to-Point, X.25) as well as choice of specific links. They will also affect how you design your network layout. You may want to create subnetworks within your network by configuring IP subnet addresses. You may, on the other hand, need to join several networks together to form an **internetwork** or **internet**.

### Line Speed

Line Speed is a measure of the rate at which data is transmitted by a physical link (usually measured in kilobits or megabits per second). The maximum line speed varies among different NS links. Line speed may therefore influence your choice of link. Although line speed does not indicate the exact throughput of a particular link, it can be used on a comparative basis to indicate relative throughput.

In general, an IEEE 802.3/Ethernet LAN or Token Ring network will be faster than a Point-to-Point or X.25 network because the bus or ring topology provides a faster routing mechanism than a series of Point-to-Point hops. FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, and 100Base-T links will be an order of magnitude faster than LAN or Token Ring. Links using leased lines will have a higher line speed than links using normal telephone lines.

Consult your Hewlett-Packard representative for line speeds and the most up-to-date performance data for various links.

### **Geographical Location**

The geographical location of the computers that will be part of your network or internet will be an important factor in deciding both the physical topology and the link types that you should use.

If all of the nodes you want to connect are located relatively close to each other (in the same building, for example) you might choose to connect them via a LAN, Token Ring link, 100VG-AnyLAN, or 100Base-T.

Another option for nodes located in the same geographic location is to use hardwired (direct-connect) Point-to-Point links. You might wish to use a Point-to-Point network if the distance between some nodes on the network will be greater than the maximum distance allowed between nodes on a LAN.

FDDI networks also offer greater distances than LAN, Token Ring, 100VG-AnyLAN, or 100Base-T networks. FDDI networks can be up to 200 kilometers in length, with nodes up to 2 kilometers apart.

If you need to connect nodes that are geographically distant (for example, HP 3000s located in different cities) you might choose to connect them via a dial link. For NS dial links, you can use the Point-to-Point 3000/iX Network Link.

Finally, if you need to use satellite transmission because of the large geographical distance between nodes, or if you need to have access to other nodes on a public or private X.25 network, you might wish to use the DTC/X.25 iX Network Link.

### **Special Cases**

The following sections describe certain design requirements for special situations, such as shared dial links, personal computers, and using non-HP 3000 minicomputers on an NS network.

#### **Shared Dial Links**

Shared dial links have two limitations that must be considered when designing a network. First, a shared dial link cannot be used as an intermediate link in a Point-to-Point network. Any other kind of dial link can be used for intermediate links, but shared dial links can be used only to connect leaf nodes (that is, nodes that receive messages targeted only for themselves, also referred to as end nodes). Second, shared dial links cannot be used as gateway halves.

#### **Non-HP 3000 Nodes (Including PCs)**

LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T, and X.25 networks can access non-HP 3000 nodes. Point-to-Point networks must be composed of only HP 3000s.

### **Applicable SYSGEN Parameters**

VT terminals are not physical devices, instead they are virtual devices created dynamically at remote logon, header entries are created for the maximum number of VT terminals at system boot time. The exact number of head entries created for VT terminals will depend on the value of MAXDYNIO (which is configurable in SYSGEN).

The exact number of remote sessions which can be supported on a given system will depend on the exact mix of jobs and sessions (remote and local, active and inactive) on that system. Networking Concepts Network Environment Design Considerations

The maximum number of concurrent processes may limit the number of remote logons before the maximum number of dynamic I/O devices does.

### **Dynamic Ldevs**

NOTE

This is actually a system parameter that can be configured to 999 in SYSGEN. The default is 332, but the actual number that can be in use may be limited by the IDD/ODD limits. VT and NS use one dynamic ldev per remote session and one per LAN link and one per Point-to-Point link.
The result of having DYNAMIC IO DEVS configured too low for NS VIRTUAL TERMINAL connections is VTERR 8 or VT INFORM 050.

Likewise the dynamic I/O device limit may be reached before the concurrent process limit.

# **Network Interface and Link Types**

The network interface (NI), the software that provides an interface between a node and a network, specifies the type and maximum number of links that can be configured for a node. Because a node's network interface determines what links can be configured for the node, links are said to be configured underneath network interfaces.

There are nine types of network interfaces (in addition to loopback):

- LAN for IEEE 802.3 and Ethernet networks.
- Token Ring for IEEE 802.5 networks.
- **FDDI** for fiber optic networks.
- 100VG-AnyLAN for 100VG-AnyLAN networks.
- 100Base-T for 100Base-T networks.
- Point-to-Point for networks that use Point-to-Point routing.
- X.25 for X.25 networks.
- **NS over SNA** is no longer offered as a product and has been removed from the Corporate Price List. The product is obsolete with no plans for support.
- Gateway half for nodes that function as gateway halves.

### **Number of Network Interfaces**

A system can have up to 12 network interfaces (NI) configured. One of these network interfaces must be loopback. For each network interface, the maximum number of links you can configure and the kinds of links possible are determined by the network interface type, as follows:

- A LAN network interface can have only one link configured under it; however, a single link can reach a large number of nodes. ThickLAN cable supports up to 100 nodes per segment; ThinLAN cable can be used for up to 30 nodes per segment; and each Ethertwist 3000/iX can be used for up to 50 nodes. **Up to two LAN NIs can be active at a time per system**.
- A Token Ring interface can have only one link configured under it; however, a single link can reach a large number of nodes. Token Ring 3000/iX Network Link can support up to 250 nodes per ring using shielded twisted pair (STP) cabling at 4 or 16 Mbps and 50 nodes per ring using unshielded twisted pair (UTP) cabling at 4 Mbps. **Only one Token Ring NI can be active at a time per system.**

Networking Concepts Network Interface and Link Types

- An FDDI interface can have only one link configured under it; however, a single link can reach a large number of nodes. FDDI/iX Network Link can support up to 1000 nodes. **Up to four FDDI NIs can be active at a time per system**.
- A Point-to-Point network interface can have up to 40 links configured under it. Point-to-Point links may be dial links, in which a modem attached to a node is used to transmit and receive data carried across telephone wires, or leased lines, in which data is sent over data-grade lines leased from a private carrier. Up to 11
   Point-to-Point NI's can be active at a time (one NI must be loopback) for a total of 12 NI's per system.
- An X.25 network interface can have from one to 11 links configured, depending on the number of configured X.25 network interfaces on the node. (A single node can have up to 11 NIs and up to 11 X.25 links.) Each link can be connected to as many as 1,024 remote nodes, with communication allowed with as many as 256 nodes at the same time. **Up to 11 X.25 NI's can be active at a time (one NI must be loopback) for a total of 12 NI's per system**.
- A gateway half network interface can have only one link configured under it (the gateway half link). Links connecting two gateway halves can be only NS Point-to-Point 3000/iX Network links. **Only one gateway half NI can be active at a time per system**.

If more than one (non-loopback) network interface is configured on a node, the network portions of the IP addresses configured for the interfaces should differ to correspond to the multiple networks to which the node belongs.

Refer to "Software Configuration Maximums" at the end of this chapter for information on configuration path maximums.

### **Priority of Network Interfaces**

If it is possible to reach a destination through more than one active NI, the network determines which NI to select according to the following priority:

loopback 100VG-AnyLAN 100BASE-T FDDI LAN Token Ring X.25 Gateway Half Point-to-Point (router)

If more than one NI of a given type is active, (for example, two X.25 NIs) the network will select the one that it finds first.

# Subnetworks

IP Subnets are used to divide one network into two or more distinct subnetworks. Subnet numbers identify subnetworks in the same way that network addresses identify physically distinct networks. Subnetting divides the node address portion of an IP address into two portions—one for identifying a specific subnetwork and one for identifying a node on that subnetwork.

### Why Use Subnets?

The use of subnets is optional. Subnets are typically used in organizations that have a large number of computers. You may want two or more physically distinct networks to share the same network address. This may occur, for example, if your organization has acquired only one network number, but any of the following is true:

- A few nodes on a single network create the bulk of the network traffic and you want to isolate those nodes on a subnetwork to reduce overall congestion.
- You have a single LAN and have reached the limit of its technology in terms of node numbers or cable length.
- LANs are located too far apart to be joined with bridges.

### **How Subnetting Works**

You may use subnets to divide your current network into subnetworks without informing remote networks about an internal change in connectivity. A packet will be routed to the proper subnet when it arrives at the gateway node. However, if you want a remote node to know about only some of the subnets on your network, this must be configured.

The network portion of an IP address must be the same for each subnetwork of the same network. The subnet portion of an IP address must be the same for each node on the same subnetwork.

### **Assigning Subnet Masks**

Before you can determine subnet numbers, you first must determine which bits of the node address will be used to contain your subnet numbers.

The bits that you designate for subnet identifiers compose the subnet mask. The subnet mask is configured with NMMGR. The remaining part of the node address is used to identify the host portion of the IP address.

#### Networking Concepts Subnetworks

The following rules apply when choosing a subnet mask and an IP address:

- Although any bits in the node address can be used as the subnet mask, Hewlett-Packard recommends aligning the subnet mask along byte boundaries, adjacent to the network number.
- Although standards allow subnets on the same network to have different subnet masks, Hewlett-Packard recommends that you assign the same subnet mask to all subnets on a network.
- Do not assign an IP address where the network address and/or node address bits are all off (all 0s) or all on (all 1s). Likewise, the subnet address bits cannot be all 0s or all 1s.

To determine the subnet mask, you first need to estimate the number of networks required and the number of nodes on each subnet. Allow enough bits for both nodes and subnets, as described in example 1.

#### Example 1

Assume you are choosing a subnet mask for a class C network (three bytes for network address, one byte for node address), and you need four subnets with up to 30 nodes on each subnet. You will need to reserve three bits for the subnet address (remember, all 0s and all 1s cannot be used) and the remaining five bits for the node numbers as shown in Figure 2-1.

#### Figure 2-1 Class C Address with Subnet Number (Example 1)



The 30 nodes per subnet will require at least five bits of the node portion of the IP address (30 < 32, and  $32=2^5$ , therefore you need 5 bits). This leaves three bits remaining in the node portion of the IP address for use as the subnet identifier. Subnet parts of all 0's or all 1's are not recommended because they can be confused with broadcast addresses. Therefore, you can have up to six subnets ( $2^3 - 2=6$ ) when three bits are used for the subnet identifier.

#### Example 2

An IP address on a class B network with an 8-bit subnet mask separates as shown in Figure 2-2.

#### Figure 2-2 Class C Address with Subnet Number (Example 2)



Now, refer again to example 1. The subnet mask must indicate that three bits of the node portion of the IP address will be used for the subnet identifier. The subnet mask turns on (sets to 1) all the relevant bits for its subnet scheme. The subnet mask for example 1 is shown below. Note that the most significant three bits of the rightmost byte are set.

Subnet Mask

Binary	11111111.1111111.11111111	11100000
Decimal	255.255.255 224	

Table 2-1 shows valid addresses for the subnetwork in example 1. You will need to know this information for NMMGR configuration. The table shows the possible values of the rightmost byte of the IP address for each of the subnets, given the criteria described in the example. (Remember, an address of all 0s or all 1s is not valid).

Column 2 shows the values, in binary, of the six subnet addresses. Five zeroes are shown in parentheses to indicate where the three subnet-address bits are located in the byte. The equivalent decimal value for each subnet address is shown in the third column. The fourth column shows the range of possible values for the node address of each subnet. The five rightmost bits make up the node portion, and the range is the same for all subnets. By combining the subnet address with the range of node addresses, the possible decimal values of the rightmost byte are obtained and shown in the fifth column.

The table shows that subnets of 30 nodes each are possible given a subnet mask of 255.255.255.224. This is derived from the column that shows the range of possible values for the five bits that make up the node portion of the IP address. The range for each of the six subnets shows 30 possible values.

Subnet	Address of Subnetwork in Binary	Decimal Value of Subnetwork	Possible Node Address on Subnetwork	Decimal Value of Rightmost Byte
1	001 (00000)	32	00001-11110	33-62
2	010 (00000)	64	00001-11110	65-94
3	011 (00000)	96	00001-11110	97–126
4	100 (00000)	128	00001-11110	129–158
5	101 (00000)	160	00001-11110	161–190
6	110 (00000)	192	00001-11110	193–222

Table 2-1Valid Addresses of Example Subnetwork

By looking at the binary values of two IP addresses, it is easy to tell if nodes belong to the same subnet. If they do, all the bits that make up the subnet mask will be the same between IP addresses in the subnet.

Take, for example, two IP addresses (in decimal and in binary) of subnet number 1 from Table 2-1:

192.6.12.41 1100 0000 0000 0110 0000 1100 0010 1001

192.6.12.55 1100 0000 0000 0110 0000 1100 0011 0111

The subnet mask has already been defined as:

 $255.255.255\ 224\ 1111\ 1111\ 1111\ 1111\ 1111\ 1111\ 1111\ 0000$ 

Because the mask has all bits except the five rightmost bits set to 1, all bits except the five rightmost bits must match between nodes on the same subnet. Because the two example IP addresses from subnet 1 do match except for their five rightmost bits, they belong to the same subnet.

Subnet addressing can be used in internetworks (networks with gateways).

NOTE

### Internetworks

Two or more networks of the same type or of different types can be linked together to form an internetwork or internet. For example, if you wanted to connect the nodes in a Point-to-Point network with the nodes on a LAN, the combination of the two networks would be called an internetwork. Creation of an internetwork allows any node on one network to communicate with any node on another network that is part of the same internetwork. Up to 256 individual networks can belong to the same NS internetwork.

The divisions between the networks in an internetwork are called network boundaries. Nodes in each network will have the same network address (network portion of the IP address); however, each network within the internetwork will have its own unique network address.

The networks in an internetwork may be connected by a bridge or router, or by HP 3000 Series 900 systems configured as gateways.

### Gateways

One method of joining networks in an internetwork is by using gateways. An HP 3000 system can have up to 14 gateways (combined number of full gateways and gateway halves).

### **Full Gateways versus Gateway Halves**

NS 3000/iX allows you to choose between connecting two networks with a full gateway or connecting them with two gateway halves. A full gateway is a node configured as a full member of two (or more) networks for the purpose of passing information between the networks to which it belongs. The node is considered a member of each of the networks for which it is configured.

A node that is a gateway half is configured as a member of a network and as a partner of another gateway half. A gateway half link that joins two networks connects two nodes (a gateway half pair) by a Point-to-Point link (NS Point-to-Point 3000/iX Network link). The gateway half link and pair is not considered a network itself. Each of the paired gateway halves is configured as a member of a different network (the two networks to be connected) and as a gateway half on the same gateway half link. Together, the two gateway halves function as a full gateway. Networking Concepts Internetworks

### **Gateway Configuration Overview**

Gateway configuration includes both identifying neighbor gateways in each node's configuration file and configuring gateway half NIs for nodes that will serve as one half of a gateway half pair. These tasks are described as follows.

### **Identifying Neighbor Gateways**

If you are including gateways in your internet configuration, you may want to modify each node's configuration file so that the node is aware of all of its neighbor gateways (gateways on the same link). You accomplish this during configuration of each network interface for which you want to allow communications over the gateway. You will find step-by-step instructions for identifying neighbor gateways in each of the link configuration sections of this manual.

An alternative to identifying neighbor gateways in every node's configuration file is to configure a default gateway for the node. Instructions for doing so are included in this manual.

The next pages show several examples of gateway configuration.

### **Neighbor Gateway Examples**

When using NMMGR to configure any node, you will be entering the identities of all the neighbor gateways into the configuration of the node. The following examples illustrate several gateway configuration scenarios based on the network represented in Figure 2-3.

- **Example 1**: The node you are configuring may be a non-gateway, such as node D in Figure 2-3. You would need to enter the identities of each of its neighbor gateways, in this case nodes C and E, at the Neighbor Gateways screen. On the Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks screen, you would also enter the IP addresses of networks 1 and 3 as two of the configured reachable networks reachable through gateway node C.
- **Example 2**: The node you are configuring may be a gateway half, such as node E in Figure 2-3. You will still need to enter the identities of the node's neighbor gateways as you configure the NI (in this case, node C is the neighbor gateway). You will also need to configure a gateway half NI for the node, as described under "Configuring a Gateway-Half Pair."
- **Example 3**: The node you are configuring may be a full gateway, such as nodes B and C in Figure 2-3. Though full gateways are never actually identified as such in the configuration process, they too, must know about the other gateways. If you were configuring node C, you would identify nodes B and E and neighbor gateways.

**Example 4**: One of the gateways on your internetwork may be designated as a default gateway, such as node C in Figure 2-3. A default gateway is a gateway that is designated to receive any traffic for which the network is unable to identify a destination. You must identify the node as a default gateway in the configuration file of each node that will access it as the default gateway. If you were configuring node D, you would identify node C as a default gateway by entering an at sign (@) in one of the IP address fields of the Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks screen. Only one gateway may be designated as a default gateway for each node. The default gateway must be on a LAN or Token Ring network.

### **Configuring a Gateway Half Pair**

If you are configuring a gateway half pair, you will need to configure a gateway half NI for each half of the gateway pair. You will find step-by-step instructions for configuring a gateway half NI in this manual.

In Figure 2-3, nodes E and F form a gateway half pair. When you configure a node as a gateway half, you enter its partner's IP address into this gateway half's configuration in the Gatehalf Configuration screen. If you were to configure node E in the figure, you would enter the IP address of node F.



#### Figure 2-3 **Gateway Configuration Scenarios**

Networking Concepts Internetworks

Gateway halves require the configuration of two separate network interfaces on each node: one for the gateway half, the other for the network it interfaces to (for example, a LAN or Point-to-Point NI). You will need to follow the instructions for the specific NI type, depending on the network type) and then follow the instructions to enter configuration items specific to the gateway half NI.

Worksheets that will aid you in planning for internetwork communication are located in Chapter 4, "Planning for Node Configuration."

# **Address Resolution**

Address resolution in NS networks refers to the mapping of node names to IP addresses and the mapping of IP addresses to lower level addresses (such as an X.25 address or a station address). Several address resolution methods are available for you to use individually or in combination with each other. You can configure these methods according to the needs of your network.

The available address resolution methods are:

- Domain name services.
- Network directory.
- Probe (and probe proxy) (LAN, 100VG-AnyLAN, and 100Base-T only).
- Address resolution protocol (ARP) (LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, and 100Base-T only).

### **Domain Name Services**

The domain name services are a mechanism for resolving node names to IP addresses. They conform to an open networking standard and will facilitate communications between HP 3000 Series 900 systems as well as with non-HP 3000 nodes.

To use the domain name services, you must assign a name, in ARPANET standard format, to each system on the network or internetwork. You configure this name on the NS Configuration screen (see configuration chapters for details).

You will also need to create a set of ASCII files on each system which contain the addressing information the system will need. Instructions for creating these files are in Chapter 12, "Configuring Domain Name Files."

Once you have configured the domain name services, the network will be able to access the node using its domain name and the domain name service routines will resolve the domain name to the node's IP address.

NOTE Domain name services provide name to IP address resolution only. If a lower level address is required for network communication (for example, an X.25 address) you will need to configure the network directory as well.

### **Network Directory**

The network directory is a set of files that contain information used by the node to communicate with other nodes in the internetwork.

#### Networking Concepts Address Resolution

You use NMMGR to perform the following network directory functions:

- Add, modify, and delete entries in the directory.
- Review and inspect directory information.
- Merge a remote directory with a directory on the local node.
- Automatically update directories on a group of remote nodes by using a background stream job controlled from a central administrative node.

See Chapter 11, "Configuring the Network Directory," for more information on configuring the network directory through NMMGR. More information on merging directories and on central administrative nodes is included in this chapter.

### When a Network Directory is Required

A network directory must be configured in the following circumstances:

- nodes running on X.25
- nodes not using domain name services
- nodes on a LAN network that do not support the HP-PROBE protocol

The network directory of a node in a Point-to-Point network must contain the IP addresses of all other nodes that you want the node to be able to reach.

When configuring the network directory for a Point-to-Point network, make sure that the IP address you enter in the network directory matches the data in the mapping screens (path name NETXPORT.NI.NIname.MAPPING.mapentry).

For nodes on an X.25 network, the network directory maps the X.25 address key to an IP address to allow a node to communicate within the X.25 network. You must configure a network directory for nodes using X.25.

#### **Planning the Network Directory**

There are two theories about how network directories should be planned and configured on a network, as follows:

- Centralized network directories.
- Decentralized network directories.

The centralized theory requires each node on the internet to have the same network directory. This means that every node in the network must have an entry in the network directory. The advantage to this is that you update the network directory in one place, then copy it to the rest of the world. The disadvantage is that network directories for large internets are going to be large.

The recommended way to create and maintain your network directory using the centralized method is to assign a single node as the central administrative node. You configure the network directory on this node and then copy it to all other nodes on the network. When the network directory is updated, it is updated on the central administrative node, then copied to the other nodes. This procedure decreases the possibility of incompatible directories. You may want to assign a central administrative node for each network or for the entire internet.

The decentralized theory suggests that each network directory be configured individually on each node. The advantage to this is that you can customize the network directory on each node for security purposes using local and global entries. The network directory will also be smaller because it will only contain entries for that particular node. However, updates must be done manually on each node.

### **Copying and Merging Network Directory Files**

The first time you configure the network directory, an entry for all remote IP addresses must be added manually using the NMMGR screens. After the first network directory is configured, you can use the MPE **STORE** and **RESTORE** commands to copy the network directory to other nodes. (This is assuming you have adopted the centralized method of network directory maintenance. If you use the decentralized method, you must always use NMMGR to create and maintain the network directory.)

NOTEThe network directory uses a KSAM file pair. Therefore, when copying a<br/>directory, be sure to copy both the data file and the key file. The system<br/>names the key file automatically using the first six letters of the<br/>network directory file name appended with a K. For example,<br/>NSDIRK.NET.SYS is the name of the key file associated with the data<br/>file NSDIR.NET.SYS.

Once a network directory has been established on each node in the internet, you can set up a job stream to automate network directory updates. The MERGEDIR command is part of a maintenance interface provided primarily to support the updating of directories using a batch job. Using this method, a job or series of jobs can be scheduled at regular intervals to copy and then merge remote directories into the local-system directory. See the MERGEDIR and the MAKESTREAM commands in Using the Node Management Services (NMS) Utilities.

Networking Concepts Address Resolution

### **Probe and Probe Proxy**

NS 3000 LAN, 100VG-AnyLAN, and 100Base-T NIs with the IEEE 802.3 protocol enabled are able to make use of a proprietary HP protocol called **probe**. Probe makes it possible for nodes on an NS IEEE 802.3 LAN, 100VG-AnyLAN, and 100Base-T to communicate without a network directory or domain names. A node can determine connection information about a node on the same LAN by sending a multicast probe request out on the network. The target node recognizes its address in the probe request and sends an individually addressed probe reply with the necessary connection information to the requesting node. The probe request/reply mechanism is sufficient to obtain connection requirements within a network.

If the nodes on that LAN are to communicate with other networks, at least one node on the network must have a network directory. The node with the network directory is called a **proxy server**. By using the probe protocol, a node without a network directory can multicast a request for an internet address from the proxy server. For backup purposes, you should designate at least two nodes to be proxy servers.

### **Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)**

HP 3000 LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, AND 100Base-T NIs are able to make use of a standard protocol called Address Resolution Protocol (ARP). ARP provides IP address to station address resolution. ARP is enabled when the Ethernet protocol or Token Ring is enabled.

### **Enabling Probe and ARP**

With the concurrent configuration of IEEE 802.3 and Ethernet on a network, both the probe and ARP protocols are also enabled. Both protocols broadcast requests to all nodes on the network to resolve the address of a given remote node.

If you disable IEEE 802.3 on a LAN NI, you also disable the probe protocol. Likewise, by disabling Ethernet, you disable the ARP protocol associated with it. You cannot disable both of these protocols simultaneously; at least one must be active to facilitate network communications.

### **Network Design Questions**

Ask yourself the following questions to make sure your design adheres to the considerations mentioned above:

1. Are all of the nodes in the network within roughly 550 meters of each other?

If so, consider connecting them with ThinLAN 3000/iX links. The maximum cable length for segments of ThinLAN 3000/iX cable is 185 meters, with a maximum of three segments connected by repeaters.

2. Are all of the nodes in the network within roughly 1,500 meters of each other?

If so, consider connecting them with ThickLAN (thick coaxial cable). The maximum cable length for each segment of ThickLAN coaxial cable is 500 meters, with a maximum of three segments connected by repeaters.

3. Are all of the nodes in the network located within 2 kilometers of each other?

If so, consider using FDDI/iX links. The maximum cable length for each segment is 2 kilometers with a maximum network length of up to 200 kilometers.

4. Are nodes located at remote sites? (For example, in different buildings in the same city, or in different cities?)

If so, consider installing an X.25 network or a Point-to-Point network using dial links or leased lines. Choose leased lines if you have a critical need for clear transmission or if the volume of data to be transmitted is relatively large.

5. Is the set of nodes you wish to connect composed of some nodes that are in close proximity to one another (for example, in the same building) and other nodes that are geographically distanced (for example, in different buildings or different cities)?

If so, you may wish to use ThinLAN 3000/iX, Token Ring 3000/iX, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, or 100Base-T networks for nodes that are located near one another and Point-to-Point or X.25 links for nodes in different buildings or cities.

6. Will HP 9000s or other minicomputers need to be part of the network?

If so, consider ThinLAN 3000/iX (or its ThickLAN option), Token Ring 3000/iX, FDDI/iX, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T, or X.25/iX System Access. 7. Do you need access to nodes on public or private X.25 networks?

If so, consider using DTC/X.25 iX Network Links.

8. Is a subset of nodes either geographically or organizationally distanced from another subset of nodes?

If so, you may wish to establish a network boundary between them in order to make them two separate networks joined by a full gateway or router. Alternatively, you may want to use subnets to divide one network into two or more physically distinct subnetworks.

9. If you must use a gateway half, is the partner-gateway half in the same building or further away?

If the two gateway halves are in the same building, you can use a direct connect link between them. If the two gateway halves are further away, you will need to use a dial link.
# **Software Configuration Maximums**

The software maximums as shown in Table 2-2, must be adhered to when configuring a supported link. These maximums may be further limited by the system hardware (number of available slots). Maximums are also documented throughout the manual for the appropriate screen.

NMMGR Screen Number/Description	Path	Maximum Limit
#9 Network Directory Select Node Name	None	File Size Limit
#44 Point-to-Point Link Configuration	None	40 links/Router NI (8 per screen)
#45 Direct Connect/Dial Node Mapping Configuration	None	1024 Mappings/Router
#46 Shared Dial Node Mapping Configuration	None	1024 Mappings/Router
#48 X.25 Configuration	None	11 Links/X.25 NI
#112 Network Interface Configuration	NETXPORT.NI	12 NI/system
#117 Gateway Half NI Links	NETXPORT.NI.NIname.LINK	1 link/Gateway Half NI
#158 Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks	NETXPORT.NI.NIname.INTERNET.gatewayn	2550 networks/NI

Table 2-2Configuration Maximums

Networking Concepts
Software Configuration Maximums

# **Planning Your Network**

This chapter will help you to draw your network map and contains worksheets to help you plan your network, internetwork, gateway, and network directory configuration. You will need to consider a number of items as you plan your configuration. This chapter provides guidelines to help you accomplish the following:

- Draw an internetwork map.
- Complete the internetwork table.
- Draw a network map and complete network worksheets for each link that you are configuring.
- Complete the network directory worksheet if a network directory is required.

# **Drawing an Internetwork Map**

This section deals with the internetwork as a whole. The internetwork worksheets consist of an internetwork map, which shows an overview of your internetwork, and an internetwork table. You will take the following steps when filling out the internetwork worksheets:

- Draw sketches of each network in the internetwork.
- Write network names, IP network addresses, and network types.
- Draw gateway nodes.
- Indicate network boundaries.

An **internetwork map** provides information about the whole internetwork. Figure 3-1 is an example of an internetwork map. This sample internetwork will be used throughout the instructions in this chapter to help explain the other drawings and tables that make up the configuration worksheets.

Before you can draw your internetwork map, you must know how many networks your internetwork will contain, and you must know each network type (LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T, NS Point-to-Point, or X.25). The internetwork in the example (Figure 3-1) contains six networks. NET1 and NET5 are LANs, NET2 is a Point-to-Point network, NET3 is an X.25 network, NET4 is a Token Ring network, and NET6 is an FDDI network.

NOTEIf you have an X.25 network, you should indicate the presence of each<br/>Datacomm and Terminal Controller (DTC) in your internetwork map,<br/>as shown in this example (Figure 3-1). Both the NS 3000/iX node and<br/>the DTC must be specially configured for X.25 links.



#### Figure 3-1 Internetwork Map

## **Communication Between Networks**

Since the main purpose of the internetwork map is to show how networks are connected, gateway nodes are the only nodes you should label on the internetwork map. All other nodes and their networks can be represented by drawing sketches of the networks, as shown in Figure 3-1. In the example, node B is a full gateway that belongs to NET1 and NET2, node A is a full gateway that belongs to NET1 and NET4, and node C is a full gateway that belongs to NET1 and NET6. Nodes G and H are gateway halves that belong to NET2 and NET5, respectively.

NOTE Single letters are used to represent node names in this example. Actual node names must be in an accepted format. They may be either in the form nodename.domain.organization or they may be in a valid domain name format.

Planning Your Network Drawing an Internetwork Map

## **Network Boundaries**

Once you have drawn your gateway nodes or routers, you have established network boundaries. Consider the example and look at Figure 3-1. Since node B in the example is a full gateway and belongs to both NET1 and NET2, the boundary between these two networks is at node B itself. The boundary between NET2 and NET5 is along the gateway-half link that connects gateway nodes G and H.

## **IP Network Addresses**

Each network in your internetwork must have a unique IP network address. Add these IP addresses to your internetwork map.

In the example, assume that the Class C IP network addresses are those shown in Figure 3-1. The specific IP node addresses do not need to be shown until completion of specific parts of the network worksheets, so node portions of IP addresses will be represented with XXX in some maps and tables.

# **Completing the Internetwork Table**

Once your internetwork map contains the information just described, you are ready to complete the internetwork table (Table 3-1).

The information requested for the first three columns of the internetwork table can be taken directly from the internetwork map, as in the example. In the Implementation Priority column, consider which networks must be operational immediately. You also may want to consider which networks will be the easiest to initiate. Analyzing these and other factors important to you, determine the order in which you plan to initiate your networks, and then enter the information in the Implementation Priority column of the internetwork table.

When you have completed both the internetwork map and the internetwork table, you have finished the internetwork worksheets.

NETWORK	NETWORK TYPE (LAN, PT-PT, X.25, TOKEN RING)	IP NETWORK ADDRESS	IMPLEMENTATION PRIORITY
NET1	LAN	C 192.006.001 XXX	1
NET2	NS POINT-TO-POINT	C 192.006.250 XXX	2
NET3	X.25	C 192.006.001 XXX	3
NET4	TOKEN RING	C 192.006.001 XXX	4
NET5	LAN	C 192.006.001 XXX	5
NET6	FDDI	C 192.006.001 XXX	б

Table 3-1Internetwork Table

# **Drawing a Network Map**

A **network map** provides information about the configuration of the computers on the network and their access to remote computers. A network map can be invaluable when troubleshooting.

Whenever you install a new system on your network, be sure you also update your network map. If you have not previously created a network map, create one now and keep it updated whenever you add or delete computers or interface cards or make cable changes.

In addition to maintaining a network map, you should also record related system information on one of the network map worksheets, provided later in this chapter. You can use the network map worksheet as a guide for configuration and later as a record of your configuration for both you and your HP support staff.

# **Network Worksheets**

For each network in your internetwork, you are asked to draw a map of the network and to complete two tables. One table lists node-specific information, and one table lists network routing information.

You also are asked to complete worksheets for each gateway half pair in your internetwork. The worksheets for a gateway half pair consist of a map of the gateway half nodes and their connecting link and a table containing information about the gateway half network interfaces.

In the sample internetwork shown in Figure 3-1, six sets of network worksheets need to be completed: one set for each of the six networks and one set for the gateway half pair.

Take the following steps when filling out a set of network worksheets:

- 1. Draw your map, showing all nodes and node names. (For Point-to-Point networks, also show all Point-to-Point links and link names. For a gateway-half pair, include the link name.)
- 2. Complete the tables: two for each network, one for each gateway-half pair.

## **LAN Network Worksheets**

One set of LAN network worksheets should be used for each LAN in your internetwork. The LAN network worksheets consist of a map of the LAN and two tables. One table contains information about each node on the LAN and one table contains network-specific internet routing information.

In this example, we have shown the network map and worksheet for NET1, one of the LAN networks shown in Figure 3-1. Use the discussion of the sample LAN network worksheets as a guide for filling out your own LAN network worksheets.

#### LAN Network Map

Figure 3-2 is a drawing of the network map for NET1. The network map is a detailed drawing of the same network shown in the internetwork map (Figure 3-1). The network name, the IP network address, and the network type are listed at the top of the network map.

In the example, the internetwork map shows that node B is a gateway node. It is noted on the NET1 network map and shows the network that the gateway node can reach. Node B is also a proxy server. The remaining NET1 nodes and their names are added to the network map. **Planning Your Network Network Worksheets** 



#### **LAN Network Table**

Refer to the LAN network map to fill in the LAN network table (Table 3-2). The first column lists the names of all the nodes on NET1. Each node is assigned an IP address that is unique within the network. Only the node portion of the IP address is listed since the IP network address is noted at the top of the table. In the third column of Table 3-2, node B is shown as a proxy server. The fourth column lists node B as a gateway node. In the Implementation Priority column, the nodes are ranked in the recommended order of configuration.

able 3-2	LAN Network Table			
NETWORK NAME: IP NETWORK ADDRESS		NET1 C 192.006.001 XXX		
А	001			2
L1	002			3
L2	003			4
L3	004			5
В	005	YES	YES	1

Table 3-2	LAN Network Table
	LAN NELWORK TADIC

### LAN Internet Routing Table

The purpose of the LAN internet routing table (Table 3-3) is to list all possible networks that can be reached from each gateway node on a LAN, such as NET1 in the example.

As shown on the internetwork map, NET1 includes a gateway node, node B. In the IP Node Address column of the LAN internet routing table, the node portion of the gateway node's IP address is listed. The LAN internet routing table shows that NET1 nodes using node B as a gateway can reach NET2 in one hop, NET5 in two hops, and NET3 in three hops. Node B is also designated as a default gateway.

Table 3-3LAN Internet Routing Table

NETWORK NAME:		NET1			
IP NETWORK ADDRESS		C 192.006.001 XXX			
GATEWAY	IP NODE ADDRESS	DESTINATION	HOPS TO DESTINATION	DEFAULT GATEWAY (Y/N)	
В	005	NET2 C 192.006.250 XXX	1	YES	
		NET5 C 192.006.252 XXX	2		
		NET3 C 192.006.251 XXX	3		

## **Token Ring Network Worksheets**

You may use the worksheets found in the LAN section for Token Ring. It is important to note that Token Ring does not use a proxy server.

## **FDDI Network Worksheets**

You may use the worksheets found in the LAN section for FDDI as well. It is important to note that FDDI does not use a proxy server.

## **100VG-AnyLAN Network Worksheets**

You may use the worksheets found in the LAN section for 100VG-AnyLAN.

### **100Base-T Network Worksheets**

You may use the worksheets found in the LAN section for 100Base-T.

Planning Your Network **Network Worksheets** 

## **Point-to-Point Network Worksheets**

One set of Point-to-Point network worksheets should be used for each Point-to-Point network in your internetwork. These network worksheets consist of a map of the Point-to-Point network and two tables. One table contains information about each node on the network and one table contains network-specific internet routing information.

#### **Point-to-Point Network Map**

NET2 is the Point-to-Point network in the sample internetwork. Figure 3-3 is a drawing of the network map for NET2. The network map is a detailed drawing of the same network shown in the internetwork map (Figure 3-1). The network name, the IP network address, and the network type are listed at the top of the network map. This information is derived from the internetwork map.

The internetwork map shows that nodes B and G are gateway nodes and also shows the networks that the gateway nodes can reach. The remaining NET2 nodes and their names are added to the network map. Node G is a central administrative node.

# **Point-to-Point Network Map** NET2 C 192.006.250 XXX POINT-TO-POINT GATEWAY NODE TO NET1 LINK2 LINK3 NET1 P LINK1 LINK5 LINK4 G GATEWAY NODE TO NET5: Central Admin. NET5

Figure 3-3

#### **Point-to-Point Network Table**

Refer to the Point-to-Point network map to fill in the Point-to-Point network table (Table 3-4). We have completed the first column by listing the names of all the nodes on NET2. Each node is assigned an IP address that is unique within the network. Only the node portions of the IP addresses are listed because we have listed the IP network address at the top of the table. In the third column of Table 3-4, note that node G is a central administrative node. In the fourth column, nodes B and G are indicated as gateway nodes. For the Implementation Priority column, the nodes are ranked in the recommended order of configuration.

NETWORK NAME:		NET2		
IP NETWORK ADDRESS		C 192.006.250 XXX		
NODE NAME	IP NODE ADDRESS	PROXY SERVER (Y/N)	GATEWAY NODE (Y/N)	IMPLEMENTATION PRIORITY
В	001		YES	2
P1	002			3
₽2	003			4
P3	004			5
G	005	YES	YES	1

Table 3-4Point-to-Point Network Table

#### **Point-to-Point Internet Routing Table**

The purpose of the Point-to-Point internet routing table (Table 3-5) is to list all possible networks that can be reached from each gateway node on a Point-to-Point network, which is NET2 in the example. (Note that there may be more than one route to a network.)

As shown on the internetwork map, NET2 includes two gateway nodes, B and G. In the IP Node Address column of the Point-to-Point internet routing table, the node portion of each gateway node's IP address is listed. The Point-to-Point internet routing table indicates that NET2 nodes using node B as a gateway can reach NET1 in one hop, NET4 in two hops, and so on.

For Node G, the same type of information is listed.

#### Planning Your Network Network Worksheets

NETWORK NAM	ME:	NET2	
IP NETWORK A	ADDRESS	C 192.006.250 XXX	
GATEWAY	IP NODE ADDRESS	DESTINATION	HOPS TO DESTINATION
В	001	NET1 C 192.006.001 XXX	1
		NET4 C 192.006.002 XXX	2
		NET3 C 192.006.251 XXX	2
		NET5 C 192.006.252 XXX	3
		NET6 C 192.006.003 XXX	2
G	005	NET5 C 192.006.252 XXX	1
		NET3 C 192.006.251 XXX	2
		NET1 C 192.006.001 XXX	3
		NET4 C 192.006.002 XXX	4
		NET3 C 192.006.003 XXX	4

#### Table 3-5 Point-to-Point Internet Routing Table

## **X.25 Network Worksheets**

One set of X.25 network worksheets should be used for each X.25 network in your internetwork. The X.25 worksheets consist of a map of the X.25 network and two tables. One table contains information about each node on the X.25 network. The other table contains network-specific internet routing information.

### X.25 Network Map

Figure 3-4 is a drawing of the network map for NET3. The network map is a detailed drawing of the same network shown in the internetwork map (Figure 3-1). The network name, the IP address, and the network type are shown on the network map. This information is derived from the internetwork map.

In the example, node B of NET1 and nodes H and I of NET5 are also part of the X.25 network. The remaining NET3 nodes and their names are added to the network map. The network map also shows node H as a central administrative node.



Figure 3-4 X.25 Network Map

Planning Your Network Network Worksheets

### X.25 Network Table

Refer to the X.25 network map to fill in the X.25 network table as shown in Table 3-6. We complete the first column by listing the names of all the nodes on NET3. Each node is assigned an IP address that is unique within the network. Only the node portions of the IP addresses are listed since the IP network address is listed at the top of the table. In the third column of the table, node H is indicated as a central administrative node. The X.25 (subnet) address for each node is listed in the fifth column of the network table. The X.25 address is a decimal number (up to 15 digits) identifying a node's location on the X.25 subnet for connections using switched virtual circuits (SVCs). Usually this address is inserted in CALL packets to set up connections using SVCs. If the network you will access is a public packet switching network (PSN), these addresses (where appropriate) are recorded on the network subscription form.

NETWORK NAME:		NET3		
IP NETWORK ADDRESS		C 192.006.251 XXX		
NODE NAME	IP NODE ADDRESS	CENTRAL ADMIN NODE (Y/N)	X.25 ADDRESS	
Н	001	Y	1234	
I	002		5678	
J	003		6879	
В	004		9876	

#### Table 3-6X.25 Network Table

#### **X.25 Internet Routing Table**

The purpose of the X.25 internet routing table (Table 3-7) is to list the other networks in the internetwork that can be reached from the X.25 network, which is NET3 in the example. (Note that there may be more than one route to a network.)

As shown in the internetwork map (Figure 3-4), NET3 includes two gateway nodes, B and H. In the X.25 internet routing table note that NET3 nodes using Node H can reach NET5 in one hop, NET2 in two hops, and so on. In the IP Node Address column, the node portion of the node's IP address is listed.

NETWORK NAME: IP NETWORK ADDRESS		NET3	
		C 192.006.251 XXX	
GATEWAY IP NODE ADDRESS		DESTINATION	HOPS TO DESTINATION
В	004	NET1 C 192.006.001 XXX	1
		NET4 C 192.006.002 XXX	2
		NET2 C 192.006.250 XXX	2
		NET5 C 192.006.252 XXX	3
Н	001	NET5 C 192.006.252 XXX	1
		NET2 C 192.006.250 XXX	2
		NET1 C 192.006.001 XXX	3
		NET4 C 192.006.002 XXX	4

Table 3-7	X.25 Internet Rou	ting Table

### **Gateway Half Pair Worksheets**

One set of gateway half pair worksheets should be used for each gateway half pair in your internetwork. The gateway half pair worksheets consist of a map of the two gateway half nodes and their connecting link, and one table that contains information about the gateway half network interfaces. In the sample internetwork shown in Figure 3-1, nodes G and H form a gateway half pair. Use the discussion of the sample gateway half pair worksheets as a guide for filling out your own gateway half pair worksheets.

#### **Gateway Half Map**

The sample internetwork contains one gateway half pair, as shown in the internetwork map, which is made up of nodes G and H and their connecting link. Figure 3-5 is a drawing of the gateway half pair showing the two nodes and the networks to which they belong. In addition, the map shows the link name, LINKRL1.

Planning Your Network Network Worksheets



#### **Gateway Half Network Interface Table**

Table 3-8 is based on the map discussed in the previous section. Both gateway half nodes, the full IP addresses of the partner nodes, the connected networks, and the name of the link are listed. Usually, the link name will be the same from the perspective of each gateway half. The address of the partner gateway half is shown to demonstrate that the partner's address is entered during configuration of a gateway half network interface.

NETWORK NAMES:		MES:	NET2, NET3	
	GATEWAY HALF NODE	FULL IP ADDRESS OF PARTNER	CONNECTED NETWORK	LINK NAME
	G/NET2	C 192.006.251 005	NET5	LINKRL1
	H/NET5	C 192.006.252 001	NET2	LINKRL1

 Table 3-8
 Gateway Half Network Interface Table

# **Network Directory Worksheet**

You can complete the network directory information table shown below for each network directory you are configuring. For your node and for each destination node, you must make a full entry in the network directory. The entry includes the destination node's name and IP address, its NI type, the global/local setting, and any additional address that is required based on the NI type. See Chapter 11, "Configuring the Network Directory," for more information on NI types and additional addresses. Table 3-9 shows some of the network directory entries you might configure for node B of the internetwork shown in Figure 3-1.

NODE **GLOBAL OR** ADDITIONAL **IP ADDRESS** TYPE NAME LOCAL ADDRESS GLOBAL C 192.006.252 001 Η 1 Ι LOCAL C 192.006.252 002 1 C 192.006.251 003 3 J GLOBAL 6879 Α GLOBAL C 192.006.001 001 5 08-00-09-11-22-11 1 Κ GLOBAL C 192.006.002 001

 Table 3-9
 Network Directory Information Table

Planning Your Network Network Directory Worksheet

# **Planning for Node Configuration**

This chapter describes how to complete node worksheets before you start configuration. You will need to collect some information ahead of time to complete these tasks.

The main purpose of the node worksheets is to determine the information you will need to configure for each node during NMMGR's guided configuration. This information depends on the type of network you have. For a description of the fields in these worksheets, see Chapter 6, "Configuring a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node," for information on LAN, Token Ring, and FDDI, and Chapter 7, "Configuring a Point-to-Point Node," for information on Point-to-Point and Chapter 8, "Configuring an X.25 Node," for information on X.25.

It is recommended that you make copies of these worksheets and fill in the parameter information, then use these worksheets to guide you through configuration in NMMGR.

Node worksheets list only the fields you can configure during guided configuration, which allows you to configure your nodes as quickly as possible. For information on configuration parameters that are available through non-guided configuration, see the *NS 3000/iX NMMGR Screens Reference Manual*.

This chapter includes:

4

- Node worksheet information.
  - Node worksheet information.
  - Token Ring configuration worksheet
  - FDDI configuration worksheet.
  - 100VG-AnyLAN configuration worksheet.
  - 100Base-T configuration worksheet.
  - Point-to-Point configuration worksheet.
  - X.25 configuration worksheet.
  - X.25 virtual circuit configuration worksheet.
- Neighbor gateway worksheet information.
  - Neighbor gateway configuration worksheet.
- Neighbor gateway reachable networks worksheet Information.
  - Neighbor gateway reachable networks configuration worksheet.

# **Node Worksheet Information**

Table 4-1, has a description of the information that needs to be gathered for the worksheets that are in this chapter. Check the worksheets to see which is the appropriate information to gather. This information is used in the configuration chapters of this manual.

Table 4-1	<b>Configuration</b>	Worksheet 1	Information
	Soundaration	nor instruct i	in or matron

Field	Screen	Description
Address key	X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration	In the network directory, the name of each node listed in the remote node name field. HP recommends that you use the node portion of the remote node's node name as the address key.
Card number	X.25 Configuration	Slot number of the DTC/X.25 Network Access card.
DTC node name	X.25 Configuration	Node name of the DTC in the form node.domain.organization. Must agree with node name configured through during configuration of the datacommunications and terminal subsystem (DTS). The node name must be entered for each DTC/X.25 network access card that allows system-to-system connections.
Enable ethernet/ Enable IEEE 802.3	LAN Configuration 100VG-AnyLAN Configuration 100Base-T Configuration	Both ethernet and IEEE 802.3 are enabled by default. You may disable one or the other but not both (one must be enabled). To disable either ethernet or IEEE 802.3, enter an N (no) in the field next to the enable question.
Facility set	X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration	For SVCs only. A name for a collection of X.25 connection parameters in the network directory. Use the default (STDSFSET) or enter a different name, then go to Facility sets to define parameters. It must match the parameters specified by your network subscription.

Field	Screen	Description
IP address	LAN Configuration; Token Ring Configuration; FDDI Configuration; 100VG-AnyLAN Configuration; 100Base-T Configuration; Point-to-Point Configuration; X.25 Configuration	There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:
		1. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).
		OR
		2. Enter only the network ( <i>nnn</i> ) and node (xxx) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).
		You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:
		a. Class A, B, C
		b. Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address.
		All nodes on the same network must use the same class of IP address. The network portion of the address must be the same for all nodes on the same network.
IP subnet mask	LAN Configuration; Token Ring Configuration; FDDI Configuration; 100VG-AnyLAN Configuration; 100Base-T Configuration; Point-to-Point Configuration; X.25 Configuration	The IP subnet mask is optional. An IP subnet mask is specified in the same format as an IP address. The mask identifies which bits of an IP address will be used to define a subnetwork. For more information refer, to the configuration chapter for the type of link you are configuring.

Field	Screen	Description
Link name		The link name represents a hardware interface card. This name must be unique to both the node and the network. The link name can have up to eight alphanumeric characters and the first character must be alphabetic.
(LAN Link name)	LAN Configuration	This represents the LAN card for which you are configuring a link.
(Token Ring Link name)	Token Ring configuration	This represents the Token Ring card for which you are configuring a link.
(FDDI Link name)	FDDI Configuration	This represents the FDDI card for which you are configuring a link.
(100VG-AnyLAN Link name)	100VG-AnyLAN Configuration	This represents the 100VG-AnyLAN card for which you are configuring a link.
(100Base-T Link name)	100Base-T Configuration	This represents the 100Base-T card for which you are configuring a link.
(X.25 Link name)	X.25 Configuration	The name of the link used by X.25 iX System Access. It must match the link name configured during configuration of the datacommunications and terminal subsystem (DTS).
(Point-to-Point Link name)	Point-to-Point Configuration	This represents the PSI card for which you are configuring a link.
Local node name	Main	The node name is the name by which the HP 3000 Series 900 computer is known in the network. The format of a node name is nodename.domain.organization where the total number of characters is 50 or fewer, and each field contains 16 or fewer characters (alphanumeric, underscore, or hyphens). The first character of each field must be alphabetic.

Field	Screen	Description
Local domain name	NS Configuration	The name of the system in ARPANET standard format. It is composed of labels, with each label separated by a period. Labels must start with a letter or digit and have as interior characters only letters, digits, hyphens(-), or underbars (_). There may be any number of labels, but the total length of the name, including periods, is limited to 255 characters. (If not using domain names for network access, leave the local node name in this field.)
Network directory name	X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration	The network directory name must be configured for each new node. The network directory contains information that one node needs in order to communicate with other nodes. The only network directory name supported by HP is NSDIR.NET.SYS.
Network Interface (NI) name	LAN Configuration; Token Ring Configuration; FDDI Configuration; 100VG-AnyLAN Configuration; 100Base-T Configuration; Point-to-Point Configuration; X.25 Configuration	The network interface (NI) name is used to easily identify a network interface. The name can be up to eight alphanumeric characters, starting with a letter. The maximum number of NIs that can be configured on a node is 12. If a node interfaces to more than one network, give each NI on that node a unique name. You will use the NI name with the <b>NETCONTROL</b> command to start the transport and network link.
Permanent VC number	X.25 Virtual circuit Configuration	For PVCs only. In the network directory, the number of the permanent virtual circuit on the remote node.
Physical path	Point-to-Point Configuration	This is the location of the programmable serial interface. Refer to the system documentation for your HP 3000 model to find the physical path of the programmable serial interface (PSI) card.

Field	Screen	Description
Physical path of LANIC	LAN Configuration	This is the location of the LANIC device adapter card. Run IOMAP utility to determine the physical path for the LAN adapter. Refer to the system documentation for your HP 3000 model for further details regarding physical path.
Physical path of device adapter	FDDI Configuration	This is the location of the FDDI device adapter card. Run IOMAP utility to determine the physical path for the FDDI adapter. Refer to the system documentation for your HP 3000 model for further details regarding the physical path.
Physical path of Token Ring device adapter	Token Ring Configuration	This is the location of the Token Ring device adapter card. Run IOMAP utility to determine the physical path for the Token Ring adapter. Refer to the system documentation for your HP 3000 model for further details regarding physical path.
Physical path of device adapter	100VG-AnyLAN Configuration	This is the location of the 100VG-AnyLAN device adapter card. Run IOMAP utility to determine the physical path for the 100VG-AnyLAN adapter. Refer to the system documentation for your HP 3000 model for further details regarding the physical path.
Link Speed	100VG-AnyLAN Configuration	This is the desired speed at which link should operate. Valid values are 10 or 100 MBit/sec.
Full Duplex Mode	100VG-AnyLAN Configuration	If the link is operating in 10 MBit/sec, should full duplex mode be used. This is based on the capability of the hub/switch to which the adapter is connected.
Physical path of device adapter	100Base-T Configuration	This is the location of the 100Base-T device adapter card. Run IOMAP utility to determine the physical path for the 100Base-T adapter. Refer to the system documentation for your HP 3000 model for further details regarding the physical path.

Field	Screen	Description
Use Auto-Negotiation	100Base-T Configuration	Should the adapter attempt to auto-negotiate with the hub/switch. Use this feature ONLY if the hub/switch supports this feature also.
Link Speed	100Base-T Configuration	This is the desired speed at which link should operate. Valid values are 10 or 100 MBit/sec. This field is only needed if auto-negotiation is not used.
Full Duplex Mode	100Base-T Configuration	Should full duplex mode be used. This is based on the capability of the hub/switch to which the adapter is connected. This field is only needed if auto-negotiation is not used.
Proxy node	LAN Configuration	The proxy field is optional. Enter Y (yes) only if your network has internetworks (networks with gateways) or non-HP nodes. Establishing a proxy node is a way of placing node name and address mapping information in a single location. For more information, see the configuration chapter for LAN link.
Remote IP address	X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration	In the network directory, the IP address of each node listed in the remote node name field.
Remote node name	X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration	In the network directory, the name of each remote X.25 node on the network
Remote X.25 address	X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration	For SVCs only. In the network directory, the X.25 address of the remote host for X.25 public data networks or private networks.

# Planning for Node Configuration Node Worksheet Information

Field	Field Screen Description	
Security class	X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration	For SVCs only. In the network directory, the security to be applied for connection establishment with the remote node.
Speed	Point-to-Point Configuration	The line transmission speed is given in bits per second. For direct connect the value must be supported by the cable. Values are 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 56000, and 64000. The default is 56000.
Туре	Point-to-Point Configuration	Enter DD (direct dial) if you always want to call the same host over a dial link. If you choose DD the remote host does not have to be adjacent and other nodes can be accessed through the remote host. Enter SD if you want to call more than one adjacent remote node over a dial link without reconfiguring. If you choose SD, no other remote nodes can be accessed through the remote host; it is an end point in the connection. Enter DC if the link is a leased line, private line, or other non-switched link.

# LAN Configuration Worksheet

Fill out the following worksheet (Figure 4-1) for each LAN link you are configuring

	connguring.	
igure 4-1	LAN Configuration	
	LAN Config	guration Worksheet
Node	e name	
Netw	ork Interface (NI) name	
	IP address	
	IP subnet mask	(optional)
	Proxy node (Y/N)	
Link	name	
	Physical path of LANIC	
	Enable Ethernet	(Y/N)
	Enable IEEE 802.3	(Y/N)

#### F

Planning for Node Configuration Node Worksheet Information

# **Token Ring Configuration Worksheet**

Fill out the following worksheet (Figure 4-2) for each Token Ring link you are configuring.

igure 4-2	Token Ring Configuration
	Token Ring Configuration Worksheet
	Node name
	Network Interface (NI) name
	IP address
	IP subnet mask (optional)
	Link name
	Physical path of Token Ring Device Adapter

# **FDDI Configuration Worksheet**

Fill out the following worksheet (Figure 4-3) for each FDDI link you are configuring.

ure 4-3	FDDI Configuration
	FDDI Configuration Worksheet
Node	e name
Netw	vork Interface (NI) name
	IP address
	IP subnet mask (optional)
Link	name
	Physical path of FDDI Device Adapter

Planning for Node Configuration Node Worksheet Information

## **100VG-AnyLAN Configuration Worksheet**

Fill out the following worksheet (Figure 4-4) for each 100VG-AnyLAN link you are configuring.

Figure 4-4	100VG-AnyI	AN Configur	ation		
	100VG-Ar	nyLAN Config	uration Wo	orksheet	
Node r	ame				
Networ	k Interface (NI) name			_	
	IP address				
	IP subnet mask		(optional)		
Link na	me			_	
	Physical path of 100Ba	se-T device adapter			
	Link speed 10	/100			
	lf"10" then Fu	II Duplex? Y/N			

## **100Base-T Configuration Worksheet**

Fill out the following worksheet (Figure 4-5) for each 100Base-T link you are configuring.

	100Base-T Configuration Worksheet	
Node name		
Network Inte	rface (NI) name	
IP	'address	
IP	' subnet mask (optional)	
Link name _		
PI	hysical path of 100Base-T device adapter	
	Use auto-negotiation? Y/N	
	If "N" then Link speed 10/100	
	Full Duplex? Y/N	

Planning for Node Configuration Node Worksheet Information

# **Point-to-Point Configuration Worksheet**

Fill out the following worksheet (Figure 4-6) for each Point-to-Point link you are configuring.

ure 4-6 P	oint-to-Point Config	uration		
	Point-to-Point Co	onfiguration W	orksheet	
Node name j			(Specify local :	system)
Network Inte	rface (NI) name			
IP address		IP subnet mask		(optional)
Link name	Physical Path	Speed	Туре	

# X.25 Configuration Worksheet

Fill out the following worksheet (Figure 4-7) for each X.25 link you are configuring.

	X.25 Config	uration Worksheet	
Node name		(Spe	cify local system)
Network Interfact	e (NI) name		
IP add	ress	IP subnet mask	(optional)
Link name	DTC Node Name		Card Number

Planning for Node Configuration Node Worksheet Information

# X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration Worksheet

Fill out the following worksheet (Figure 4-8) for each X.25 Virtual Circuit you are configuring.

0	al Circuit Configuration
X.25 Virt	ual Circuit Configuration Worksh
Network directory name	
Remote node nam	e
Remote IP Address	·
Address key	
Network Interface (NI) na	me
If address type is s	witched virtual ciruit, enter:
Remote X.25 a	ddress
Facility set	
Security class	(IN, OU, IO, L
If address type is p	ermanent virtual circuit, enter:
Permanent VC	number
## **Neighbor Gateway Worksheet Information**

The following is a description of the information that needs to be gathered for the worksheets that follow in this chapter. This information is used for configuring nodes.

Gateway name	Enter the name of a gateway that is on the same network as the node that you are configuring. (Nodes are on the same network if the network portions of their IP addresses are the same.) Each gateway name can be as long as eight alphanumeric characters. The first character must be alphabetic
New name	Enter the name of a gateway that is on the same network as the node that you are configuring. (Nodes are on the same network if the network portions of their IP addresses are the same.) Each gateway name can be as long as eight alphanumeric characters. The first character must be alphabetic.
Configured Gateways	This is a list of gateways that are configured. Gateway names are automatically entered in these fields when they are entered above.

Planning for Node Configuration Neighbor Gateway Worksheet Information

#### **Neighbor Gateway Configuration Worksheet**

Fill out the following worksheet (Figure 4-9) for each neighbor gateway you are configuring.

Figure 4-9	Neighbor Gateway Configuration						
Neighbor Gateways Configuration Worksheet							
	Bateway name						
	New name						
	Configured Gateways						

#### Neighbor Gateway Reachable networks Worksheet Information

The following is a description of the information that needs to be gathered for the worksheets that follow in this chapter. This information is used for configuring nodes.

Neighbor	
Gateway IP	
Internet	
Address	This is the IP address of the gateway specified on the Neighbor Gateways screen. The IP address is in the same format as the LAN Configuration screen. An example of an address is: C 192.007.007 001
IP network	
address	The IP addresses of all the remote networks that can be reached through the gateway whose IP address is configured in the previous field. If the gateway node is to serve as a default gateway, enter an at sign (@) in one of these fields.
IP mask	The IP mask allows you to specify a subnet mask for each reachable network. This is in the same format as an IP address. This mask is optional.
Норз	This is the number of hops (full gateways) that a packet travels to reach a remote network from a local network. Two partner gateway halves count as one hop.

#### Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks Configuration Worksheet

Fill out the following worksheet (Figure 4-10) for each neighbor gateway reachable network you are configuring.

Figure 4-10 Reachable Network Configuration
---

Г

		Neighbor Gateway IP Internet Addre
	Configured Reachable I	Networks
IP Network Address	IP Mask	Hops

٦

# **Introductory Screens**

The introductory screens are the first few screens that are displayed when you configure a node using NMMGR.

Figure 5-1 shows the screen flow of the introductory screens. [FUNCTION] denotes the function key used at a screen to invoke the next screen on the screen flow. This chapter describes the introductory screens relevant to configuring NS unguided networks.

Figure 5-1 NMMGR Screen Flow

5



## **To Begin the Configuration Process**

The procedures that follow describe how to modify the NMMGR configuration file for the introductory screens.

#### **To Start NMMGR**

Node manager (NM) or network administrator (NA) capabilities are required to run this program.

To run NMMGR:

- 1. Type NMMGR.PUB.SYS at the system prompt (:).
- 2. Press [RETURN].

NOTE

As of version 4.0 of the operating system, you can modify the link configurations in NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS when the **Network Services** are active. However, the network must be stopped and restarted for the changes made in NMMGR to be implemented.

If NS is down, you will see the following two messages in response to the **NETCONTROL STATUS** command:

TRANSPORT NOT ACTIVE. (NETEXPORTWARN 0001) ENCOUNTERED ONE OR MORE WARNINGS WHILE PROCESSING COMMAND. (CIWARN 4437)

#### To Open the Configuration File

The Open Configuration/Directory File screen (#1) in Figure 5-2 is the first screen displayed when you run NMMGR.

	•
NMMGR/3000 (V.uu.ff) #1 Open Configuration/Directory File Enter a file or directory name and press the corresponding function key. Command:	
Configuration file name [NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS	
Backup configuration file name [NMCBACK.PUB.SYS	
Network directory file name [NSDIR.NET.SYS	
If a write access password has been assigned, you must enter the password to modify the configuration file.	
Write access password	
Onen Onen Heln H	Exit
Config Directry Pro	ogram

#### Figure 5-2Open Configuration/Directory File Screen

Follow the steps listed here to enter data for this screen. Refer to "Fields" subsection for detailed information about each field on the screen.

- **Step 1.** Verify that the correct configuration file name, backup configuration file name, and network directory file name are in the appropriate fields.
- **Step 2.** If you have assigned a write access password, enter it in this field. If you are not using the password feature, leave this field blank.
- **Step 3.** Press the **[Open Config]** key. If you are creating the configuration file for the first time, NMMGR will ask you to verify creation. Press the **[Open Config]** key again to continue.

#### configuration

**Fields** 

file name The only configuration file name the system recognizes for use by the network subsystem is NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS. You can, however, create or modify a configuration file using a different name and save it as an offline configuration file. You can use offline configuration files as a means of creating and storing configurations that you want to use in the future or that you are preparing for use on a different system. When you are ready to use an **offline configuration file**, rename it as NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS and reboot the system. (Keep in mind that any file you use as a configuration file must be successfully validated before you try to use it.) Introductory Screens
To Begin the Configuration Process

Backup configuration A backup file name must be specified whenever a file name configuration file is opened or created. The default backup configuration file name is NMCBACK.group.account. The backup file will be automatically updated with the contents of the configuration file each time the configuration file is successfully validated. Network directory file name A network directory must be configured in the following circumstances: nodes running X.25 nodes not using domain name services nodes on a LAN network that do not support the **HP-PROBE** protocol The only network directory file name supported by HP is NSDIR.NET.SYS. This file is part of a KSAM pair. A key file is created at the same time as this data file. The key file will automatically be named using the first six letters of the network directory file name, appended with the character K. For example, NSDIRK.NET.SYS is the name of the key file associated with the data file NSDIR.NET.SYS. If the name of the data file is less than six letters long, then the entire file name would be appended with a K. Write access The password is an optional feature. If a password has password been assigned, you must enter it in the password field to update the configuration file or the directory file. It is still possible to open an existing file without using an assigned password, but the file will be in read only mode and NMMGR will not accept changes. If a password has not been assigned, you should ignore the password field.

If you want to assign a password for the system you are configuring, see U*sing the Node Management Services (NMS) Utilities*.

#### **To Select NS Configuration**

To Select NS Configuration. The Main screen (#2) in Figure 5-3 is displayed after you create or open a configuration file by pressing the **[Open Config]** key from the Open Configuration Directory File screen (#1) in Figure 5-2.

rigule 5-5 Main Screen
------------------------

								•
NMMGR/300 Type in t <u>Command</u> :	00 (V.uu. the node	ff) <b>#</b> 2 name and	Main press S	ave Data; the	en press	the desin	red funct	Data: Y ion key.
Local HP	3000 noo	le name 🚺	ALPHA.DO	MAIN.ORG				
Are you u Do you ha	using Ope ave X.25	enView DT system−t	(nod C Manage o-system	e.domaNn.orga r? []] (Y/1 or PAD conne	anization V) ections <b>?</b>	) ¥ (¥/1	4)	
DTS	- Config	guration	of DTC d	evice connect	ions, li	nks, & pi	rofiles.	
NS	- Config NS/Tol 100VGI	guration ten Ring .AN, 100B	of ARPA (802.5), T.	Network: Log X.25 (WAN),	gging, LA Point <del>-</del> to	N (802.3, —Point, 1	/Ethernet NS/SNA, F	DDI),
osi	- Config OSI Tr	guration ransport	of OSI n & Sessio	etwork: n (OTS) and (	OSI FTAM	services		
IBM - Configuration of the IBM network: Logging, SNA node, NRJE, RJE, IMF, DHCF, APPC, & SNADS.								
DTS	NS	0S1	IBM		Utility	Save Data	He1p	Prior Screen

NOTE		NS/SNA is no l the Corporate I support.	onger offered as a product and has been removed from Price List. The product is obsolete with no plans for
	Step 1.	Ensure that the or if the inform information an <i>Terminals, Prin</i> configuring the	e information in the fields on this screen is correct. If not, ation has not been entered, specify the correct d press the <b>[Save Data]</b> key. (See <i>Configuring Systems for</i> <i>nters, and Other Serial Devices</i> for information about information on this screen.)
	Step 2.	When you are s [NS] key to sele	satisfied with the information as configured, press the ct the NS configuration branch.
Fields		Local node name	The local node name is the name by which the HP 3000 Series 900 computer is known in the network. The format of a node name is nodename.domain.organization where the total number of characters is 50 or fewer, and each field

contains 16 or fewer characters (alphanumeric, underscore, or hyphens). The first character of each field must be alphabetic.

The nodename portion of each node name must be unique within the node's network. The nodename.domain portion of each node name must be unique within the internetwork. HP recommends that all nodes on the network be assigned the same domain and organization.

Assign meaningful node names. For example, MKTG.BND.HP and LAB.BND.HP are meaningful names for two nodes on the same network within Hewlett-Packard. One node (MKTG.BND.HP) is used by the marketing department. The other node (LAB.BND.HP) is used by the lab. The domain field is the same because the nodes belong to the same network. The organization field is the same because the nodes belong to the same internetwork.

Are you using

OpenView DTC

Manager? If you answer yes to this question, NMMGR assumes you are using a PC to manage your system and takes you to the corresponding set of screens when you configure DTS. If you answer no, NMMGR assumes you are using host-based network management and takes you to a different set of DTS screens. You should already have answered this question when you configured DTS.

Do you have X.25

system-

to-system or PAD

connections? If you answer yes to this question, NMMGR assumes you are configuring X.25 connections and takes you to the set of screens required to configure DTC X.25 Network Access Cards when you configure DTS. If you answer no, NMMGR assumes you have no need to configure X.25 connections and takes you to a different set of DTS screens. You should already have answered this question when you configured DTS.

#### **To Select Guided Configuration**

The NS Configuration screen (#166) in Figure 5-4 is displayed if you press the **[NS]** key at the Main screen (#2) in Figure 5-3.

#### Figure 5-4 NS Configuration Screen

			•			
NMMGR/3000 (V.uu.ff) #166 NS Configuration Select the next screen and press the corresponding fun Command:	ction key	7.	Data: Y			
Guided - Use this function to define or modify your Config directory, or logging configuration.	network,	, network				
Unguided - You only need to use unguided (manual) configuration if you Config need to modify default network performance parameters not accessible through guided configuration.						
Local domain name: If your network uses domain names, in the field below and press the Save Data key before or unguided option. Otherwise, leave the local node n	enter th selecting ame in th	ne domain g the gui nis field	name ded			
[ALPHA.ARPA.DOM.COM [ [ [						
File: NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS						
Guided     Unguided       Config     Config	Save Data	He1p	Prior Screen			

- **Step 1.** If you are using domain names for network access, replace the node name in the field at the bottom of the screen with this system's domain name and press the **[Save Data]** key. If not using domain names, leave the node name as is.
- **Step 2.** Press the **[Guided Config]** key to proceed with guided configuration of LAN.

#### **Guided/Unguided Configuration**

Hewlett-Packard recommends that you press the **[Guided Config]** key to select the guided configuration branch whenever you need to initially configure a network interface. Guided configuration supplies many default values for your configuration and requires that you visit a minimal number of screens. This manual provides information on every screen available to you through unguided NS configuration.

The **[Unguided Config]** key is used to modify configuration values that are not available in the guided screens. To use the unguided configuration screens, refer to the *NS 3000/iX NMMGR Screens Reference Manual.* 

**Introductory Screens To Begin the Configuration Process** 

Name

Fields

Local Domain The name of this system in the ARPANET standard format. This name can be used by other nodes on the network to access this host.

> The domain name is composed of labels, with each label separated by a period. Each label must start with a letter or digit, and have as interior characters only letters, digits, hyphens (-), or underbars (\_). A domain name may have any number of labels, but its total length, including periods, is limited to 255 characters.

label[.label][...]

Domain names are not case sensitive.

Use of domain names is optional. If you are not using domain names for network access, leave the local node name in this field.

#### **To Perform Guided Network Transport** Configuration

The Network Transport Configuration screen (#42) in Figure 5-5 is displayed if you press the [Guided Config] key at the NS Configuration screen (#166) in Figure 5-4.

#### Figure 5-5 **Network Transport Configuration Screen**

NMMGR/30 Enter th Command:	00 (V.uu e informa	.ff) #42 ation req	Network uired; t	Transport Co hen press the	onfigurat e desired	ion function	n key.	
Config Network	- To c Et Et	create or nter a ne nter a ne	modify twork in twork ty	a network terface: [ pe: [	]	1 = LAN  3 = X.23  5 = Gate  6 = Toke  7 = FDD  8 = 1000  9 = 1001  9 = 1001  1 = LAN  1 = LAN  1 = LAN  2 = Cate  1 = Cate  2 =	2 = Pt 5 4 = SN eway Half en Ring I VG 802.3 3T	-Pt IA
	Tł	nen press	the Con	fig Network l	cey.			
Modify Logging	- To r Pr cr is	nodify de ress the reated wi s configu	fault lo Modify L th defau red).	gging config ogging key (1 lts when the	ration: note that first ne	logging twork typ	is pe	
		616.00					77 1	
Conlig	riodity				LIST		нетр	Prior
Network	Logging				Networks			Screen

- **Step 1.** Next to the words Enter a network interface:, enter a name for the selected network interface (for example, LANNI).
- **Step 2.** Next to the words Enter a network type:, enter the selected network type number indicated on the above screen. (For example, enter a 1 to indicate that the NI is a LAN NI.)
- **Step 3.** Press the **[Config Network]** key. (There may be a short pause before the next screen appears.)
- **NOTE** NS/SNA is no longer offered as a product and has been removed from the Corporate Price List. The product is obsolete with no plans for support.
  - **Step 4.** Proceed to the chapter of the network interface selected above for screen information. Refer to Chapter 6, "Configuring a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node," for information on LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, and 100Base-T; and other chapters for information on Point-to-Point, X.25, and Gateway Half respectively.
- Fields Enter a network

interface

The network name (NI name) is used to easily identify one of the types of network interfaces: LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T, NS Point-to-Point, X.25 or Gateway Half. The name can be up to eight alphanumeric characters, starting with a letter. The maximum number of NIs that can be configured on a node is 12. **One of the 12 allowable NIs is reserved for loopback. (Loopback is configured for you automatically.)** 

If a node interfaces to more than one network, give each NI on that node a unique name. Although all nodes on the same network do not have to have the same NI name, it will be easier to remember if you make the NI name the same for all nodes on the same network (for instance, LANNET). You will use the NI name with the **NETCONTROL** command to start the transport and network link.

Enter a

network type Number that indicates the type of network interface you are configuring. You must enter a network type if you are configuring a new network interface. Refer to the following for what number to enter:

> Enter 1 for a LAN NI Enter 2 for a Point-to-Point (router) NI Enter 3 for an X.25 NI

Introductory Screens
To Begin the Configuration Process

Enter 4 for an SNA NI Enter 5 for a Gateway Half NI Enter 6 for a Token Ring NI Enter 7 for an FDDI NI Enter 8 for 100VG-AnyLAN Enter 9 for 100Base-T

# Configuring a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T

## Node

6

This chapter provides step-by-step instructions for configuring local area network (LAN), Token Ring, Fiber Distributed Data Interface (FDDI), 100VG-AnyLAN, and 100Base-T links. This manual assumes that you are using the guided configuration capabilities of NMMGR.

Figure 6-1 shows the screen flow for configuring LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, and 100Base-T screens. Screens unique to the configuration of LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN and 100Base-T are indicated by bold boxed screens. **[FUNCTION]** denotes the function key used at a screen to invoke the next screen on the screen flow.

Figure 6-1 Configuring Screen Flow



Before using NMMGR to configure a link, you should complete the worksheets provided. See Chapter 4, "Planning for Node Configuration," for more information on planning your configuration and filling out the configuration worksheets.

This chapter includes step-by-step instructions to help you perform the following tasks:

- Begin the configuration process.
- Configure a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, or 100Base-T network interfaces.

Once the above tasks are completed, refer to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," for step-by-step instructions to help you perform the following validation tasks:

- Validate the network transport configuration.
- Cross-validate in SYSGEN.

## **To Configure a LAN Network Interface**

The LAN Configuration screen (#41) in Figure 6-2 is displayed when you press the **[Config Network]** key at the Network Transport Configuration screen (#42) with an NI type of 1 (LAN). Refer to Chapter 5, "Introductory Screens," for information on the Network Transport Configuration screen.

Figure 6-2LAN Configuration Screen

MMGR/3000 (B.06.00) #41 LAN Configuration Data: Y Fill in the required information; then press the Save Data key. Command:					
Node name (First 50 chars) ALPHA.ARPA.DOM.COM	Н				
Network Interface (NI) name [LAN]					
IP address [] IP subnet mask [] (optional) Proxy node [N] (Y/N)					
ink name [					
Physical path of LANIC [Y] (Y/N) Enable Ethernet? [Y] (Y/N) Enable IEEE802.3? [Y] (Y/N)					
Press Neighbor Gateways to configure neighbor gateways, if any. If done configuring, press the Validate Netxport key. Type "open" on the command line and press enter to configure the directory.					
<u>ile:</u> NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS	V				
List Delete Read Neighbor Validate Save Help Prior					
MIS   MI  OLHER MIGALEWAYS   MELXPORT  DATA   SCREEN					

- Step 1. In the IP address field, enter the internet protocol (IP) address for the node being configured. An example of an address is: C 192.191.191 009.
- **Step 2.** The IP subnet mask is optional. If entering one, tab to the IP subnet mask field and enter the number in the same format as an IP address.
- **Step 3.** The proxy node is optional. Enter Y only if your network has internetworks (networks with gateways) or non-HP nodes and you are not using domain name services.
- **Step 4.** Move to the Link name field. Enter a link name to represent the LAN card for which you are configuring a link. This name must be unique to the node.
- **Step 5.** Tab down to the field called Physical path of LANIC. Enter the physical path number corresponding to the SPU slot number where the LAN interface controller card is located.

Configuring a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node **To Configure a LAN Network Interface** 

- **Step 6.** Tab down to the field called Enable Ethernet (Y/N). By default, ethernet is enabled. Change the field to N if you *do not* want ethernet enabled.
- Step 7. Tab down to field called Enable IEEE 802.3 (Y/N). By default, IEEE 802.3 is enabled. Change the field to N if you *do not* want IEEE 802.3 enabled.
- **Step 8.** Press the **[Save Data]** key to save the LAN link configuration. If you need to identify neighbor gateways, press the **[Neighbor Gateways]** key and proceed to the section in this chapter called "To Identify Neighbor Gateways." Otherwise, proceed to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," and press the **[Validate Netxport]** key.

Optional Keys

Press the **[List NIs]** key to list the names and types of already configured network interfaces.

Press the **[Delete NI]** key to remove a configured network interface from the configuration file.

Press the **[Read Other NI]** key to call up a previously configured Network Interface name.

Fields Node name Display only.

Network Interface NI)

name Display only.

IP address The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The **network** portion must be the *same* for all nodes on a LAN network; the **node** portion must be *unique* for all nodes on a LAN network.

There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:

1. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).

OR

2. Enter only the network (*nnn*) and node (*xxx*) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).

You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:

- Class A, B, C
- Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address.

HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:

	Class	A nnn xxx.xxx.xxx
		B nnn.nnn xxx.xxx
		C nnn.mmm.mmm xxx
	Where:	nnn = the network portion of the IP address and $xxx$ = the node portion of the IP address.
For Class C, th and 254.	e node p	ortion of the IP address must be between 001
If you are addi network portion have to find out address of your portions of the numbered seque specify a unique have a network node name and want to find out following comm	ng your M n of each t what th r NS 3000 IP addre tentially, te node po k map, it I IP addre t each no nand (NM	NS 3000/iX node to an existing network, the node's IP address should be the same. You will is is, and use it in the network portion of the IP D/iX node. Also, you will need to know the node sses of each of the nodes (usually they will be such as 001, 002, and so on), so that you can ortion for the IP address of your node. If you should provide a record of such items as the ess of each node. If there is no record, and if you ode's IP address, you will have to issue the A capability required) on each of the nodes:
NETCONTROL 1	NET=NIna	ume ; STATUS
One of the line complete IP ad node portion of	s of outpo dress is fo f the class	ut from this command tells you what the or that node; the last three digits are the unique s C address.
To obtain a cla Incorporated ( address below. IP address req	ss B or C GSI). To c Allow at uest. G Ar 79 Vi (8	IP address, contact Government Systems, obtain an application form, write GSI at the least eight working days for GSI to process an overnment Systems, Inc. ttn: Network Information Center 090 Boeing Ct. ienna, VA 22183 000) 364-3642 or FAX (703) 821-6161
IP subnet mask	An IP se an IP ac express period (	ubnet mask is specified in the same format as ddress. The 32-bit mask is grouped in octets ed as decimal integers and delimited by either a .) or a space. An IP mask is used when

NOTE

configuring subnetworks. The mask identifies which bits of an IP address will be used to define a subnetwork. To determine these bits, you first need to estimate how many subnetworks and nodes per subnetwork you need. See Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts," for details on deriving an IP subnet mask.

Proxy node Establishing a proxy node is a way of placing node name and address mapping information in a single location. If you are configuring an internetwork or a network with non-HP nodes, it may be easier to update your configurations if you have them located in a central place, that is, the proxy node. On an internetwork, the proxy node is usually a gateway. (It is not necessary to configure a proxy node if you have configured domain names. See Chapter 12, "Configuring Domain Name Files," for information on domain names.)

Link name The link name can have up to eight alphanumeric characters and the first character must be alphabetic.

Physical Path of

- LANIC The physical path number corresponds to the slot location of a node's local area network interface controller (LANIC) card. Recommended slot locations and physical path calculations vary according to the type of HP 3000 system you are running. If you are unsure of the slot location or of the physical path number to configure for your system, see your system documentation or consult your Hewlett-Packard service representative.
- Enable Ethernet?

A  $\Upsilon$  in this field enables ethernet for the LAN. You can enable either ethernet or IEEE 802.3 or both simultaneously. One or the other must be enabled (both fields may not be set to N). Ethernet is enabled by default.

Disabling Ethernet has the effect of disabling the ARP protocol as well and you will need to handle name to IP address resolution by other means.

Enable

IEEE 802.3? A Y in this field enables IEEE 802.3 for the LAN. You can enable either IEEE 802.3 or ethernet or both simultaneously. One or the other must be enabled (both fields may not be set to N). IEEE 802.3 is enabled by default.

Disabling IEEE 802.3 has the effect of disabling the probe protocol as well and you will need to handle name to IP address resolution by other means.

# To Configure a Token Ring Network Interface

The Token Ring Configuration screen (#49) in Figure 6-3 is displayed when you press the **[Config Network]** key at the Network Transport Configuration screen (#42) with an NI type of 6 (Token Ring). Refer to Chapter 5, "Introductory Screens," for information on the Network Transport Configuration screen.

Figure 6-3Token Ring Configuration Screen



- Step 1. In the IP address field, enter the internet protocol (IP) address for the node being configured. An example of an address is C 192.191.191 009.
- **Step 2.** The IP subnet mask is optional. If entering one, tab to the IP subnet mask field and enter the number in the same format as an IP address.
- **Step 3.** Move to the Link name field. Enter a link name to represent the Token Ring card for which you are configuring a link. This name must be unique to the node.
- **Step 4.** Tab down to the field called Physical Path of Token Ring Device Adapter. Enter the physical path number corresponding to the SPU slot number where the Token Ring device adapter is located.

NOTE		If the same Token Ring card is being used for both NS and SNA communications, you must use the same value for this field as is configured for the SNA Link.				
Step 5.		Press the <b>[Save Data]</b> key to save the Token Ring link configuration. If you need to identify neighbor gateways, press the <b>[Neighbor Gateways]</b> key and proceed to the section in the chapter called "To Identify Neighbor Gateways." Otherwise, proceed to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," and press the <b>[Validate Netxport]</b> key.				
		Optional Key	∕s Press tl already	ne [List NIs] key to list the names and types of configured network interfaces.		
			Press th interfac	ne <b>[Delete NI]</b> key to remove a configured network ce from the configuration file.		
			ne [ <b>Read Other NI]</b> key to call up a previously red Network Interface name.			
Fields		Node name	Display	only.		
		Network Interface (NI) name	Display	only.		
		IP address	The IP a IP addr portion nodes o <i>unique</i>	address is an address of a node on a network. An ess has two parts: a network portion and a node . The <b>network</b> portion must be the <i>same</i> for all n a LAN network; the <b>node</b> portion must be for all nodes on a LAN network.		
		HP assigns the from ARPA Cla B. The complet	e network ass C, tho e format	x portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses ough your addresses may also be of Classes A or s are:		
			Class	A nnn xxx.xxx		
				B nnn.nnn xxx.xxx		
				C nnn.mmm.mmm xxx		

Where: nnn = the network portion of the IP address and xxx = the node portion of the IP address.

For Class C, the node portion of the IP address must be between 001 and 254.

If you are adding your NS 3000/iX node to an existing network, the network portion of each node's IP address should be the same. You will have to find out what this is, and use it in the network portion of the IP

Configuring a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node To Configure a Token Ring Network Interface address of your NS 3000/iX node. Also, you will need to know the node portions of the IP addresses of each of the nodes (usually they will be numbered sequentially, such as 001, 002, and so on), so that you can specify a unique node portion for the IP address of your node. If you have a network map, it should provide a record of such items as the node name and IP address of each node. If there is no record, and if you want to find out each node's IP address, you will have to issue the following command (NM capability required) on each of the nodes: NETCONTROL NET=NIname; STATUS One of the lines of output from this command tells you what the complete IP address is for that node; the last three digits are the unique node portion of the class C address. NOTE To obtain a class B or C IP address, contact Government Systems, Incorporated (GSI). To obtain an application form, write GSI at the address below. Allow at least eight working days for GSI to process an IP address request. Government Systems, Inc. Attn: Network Information Center 7990 Boeing Ct. Vienna, VA 22183 (800) 364-3642 (703) 821-6161 IP subnet An IP subnet mask is specified in the same format as mask an IP address. The 32-bit mask is grouped in octets expressed as decimal integers and delimited by either a period (.) or a space. An IP mask is used when configuring subnetworks. The mask identifies which bits of the IP address comprise the network and subnetwork portion. The link name can have up to eight alphanumeric Link name characters and the first character must be alphabetic. NOTE If the same Token Ring card is being used for both NS and SNA communications, you must use the same name in this field as is configured for the SNA Link. Physical Path of Device Adapter The physical path number corresponds to the slot location of a node's device adapter. Recommended slot locations and physical path calculations vary according to the type of HP 3000 system you are running. If you are unsure of the slot location or of the physical path number to configure for your system, see your system documentation or consult your Hewlett-Packard service representative.

#### **To Configure an FDDI Network Interface**

The FDDI Configuration screen (#201) in Figure 6-4 is displayed when you press the **[Config Network]** key at the Network Transport Configuration screen (#42) with an NI type of 7 (FDDI). Refer to Chapter 5, "Introductory Screens," for information on the Network Transport Configuration screen.

Figure 6-4 FDDI Configuration Screen

0									• 🗆
NMMGR/30 Fill in Command:	00 (B.06. the requi	.00) <b>#</b> 201 ired info	FDDI Co rmation;	onfiguration then press t	he Save D	ata key.		Data:	ΥA
Node nam	e (First	50 chars	) ALPHA.A	ARPA.DOM.COM					Н
Network	Interface	e (NI) na	me <b>[FDDI</b>						
IP add IP sub	ress net mask	[		] ] (optional	)				
Link nam	Link name [								
Physic	al path d	of device	adapter	[	]				
Press Ne If done Type "op	ighbor Ga configuri en" on th	ateways t ing, pres ne comman	o configu s the Val d line an	are neighbor Lidate Netxpo nd press ente	gateways, rt key. r to conf	if any. igure th	e directo	ory.	
<u>File:</u> N	MCONFIG.H	PUB.SYS							V
List NIs	Delete	Read	Neighbor Cateways		Validate	Save Data	He1p	Prior	
1113	111	Conci NI	outenays		mecapore	Data		l perce	**

- Step 1. In the IP address field, enter the internet protocol (IP) address for the node being configured. An example of an address is C 192.191.191 009.
- **Step 2.** The IP subnet mask is optional. If entering one, tab to the IP subnet mask field and enter the number in the same format as an IP address.
- **Step 3.** Move to the Link name field. Enter a link name to represent the FDDI card for which you are configuring a link. This name must be unique to the node.
- **Step 4.** Tab down to the field called Physical Path of FDDI Device Adapter. Enter the physical path number corresponding to the SPU slot number where the FDDI device adapter is located.
- **Step 5.** Press the **[Save Data]** key to save the FDDI link configuration. If you need to identify neighbor gateways, press the **[Neighbor Gateways]** key and proceed to the section in the chapter called "To Identify Neighbor

	Configuring a LAN, T To Configure an FD	oken Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node DI Network Interface				
	Gateways." Oth Transport and [Validate Netxpo	nerwise, proceed to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," and press the ort] key.				
	Optional Key	'S				
		Press the [List NIs] key to list the names and types of already configured network interfaces.				
		Press the <b>[Delete NI]</b> key to remove a configured network interface from the configuration file.				
		Press the <b>[Read Other NI]</b> key to call up a previously configured Network Interface name.				
Fields	Node name	Display only.				
	Network Interface (NI) name	Display only.				
	IP address	The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The <b>network</b> portion must be the <i>same</i> for all nodes on a FDDI network; the <b>node</b> portion must be <i>unique</i> for all nodes on a FDDI network.				
	There are two i within NMMG	methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address R:				
	1. Enter the fu C 192.191	lly qualified IP address (for example, Class C, . 191 009).				
	OR					
	2. Enter only t address as f periods or bl	he network ( <i>nnn</i> ) and node ( <i>xxx</i> ) portions of the IP our positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by lanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).				
	You need no	t enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:				
	• Class A, I	B, C				
	• Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address					
	HP assigns the from ARPA Cla B. The complet	network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses ass C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or e formats are:				
		Class A nnn xxx.xxx				

		B nnn.nnn xxx.xxx
		C nnn.mmm.mmm xxx
	Where:	nnn = the network portion of the IP address and $xxx =$ the node portion of the IP address.
For Class C, th and 254.	e node p	ortion of the IP address must be between 001
If you are addin network portio have to find our address of your portions of the numbered seque specify a unique have a network node name and want to find our following comm	ng your N n of each t what th r NS 3000 IP addre tentially, te node po c map, it I IP addre t each no nand (NM	NS 3000/iX node to an existing network, the node's IP address should be the same. You will his is, and use it in the network portion of the IP 0/iX node. Also, you will need to know the node esses of each of the nodes (usually they will be such as 001, 002, and so on), so that you can ortion for the IP address of your node. If you should provide a record of such items as the ess of each node. If there is no record, and if you ode's IP address, you will have to issue the <i>I</i> capability required) on each of the nodes:
NETCONTROL 1	NET=NIna	ume ; STATUS
One of the line complete IP ad node portion of	s of outpo dress is f the class	ut from this command tells you what the for that node; the last three digits are the unique s C address.
To obtain a class Incorporated (C address below. IP address requ	ss B or C GSI). To c Allow at uest.	IP address, contact Government Systems, obtain an application form, write GSI at the least eight working days for GSI to process an
	G A 14 C (8	overnment Systems, Inc. ttn: Network Information Center 4200 Park Meadow Drive hantilly, CA 22021 600) 364-3642 (703) 802-4535
IP subnet mask	An IP s an IP ac express period ( configur bits of t subnety	ubnet mask is specified in the same format as ddress. The 32-bit mask is grouped in octets ed as decimal integers and delimited by either a (.) or a space. An IP mask is used when ring subnetworks. The mask identifies which he IP address comprise the network and work portion.
Link name	The linl charact	k name can have up to eight alphanumeric ers and the first character must be alphabetic.

NOTE

Configuring a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node **To Configure an FDDI Network Interface** 

Physical Path of FDDI Device Adapter The physical path number corresponds to the slot location of a node's FDDI device adapter. Recommended slot locations and physical path calculations vary according to the type of HP 3000 system you are running. If you are unsure of the slot location or of the physical path number to configure for your system, see your system documentation or consult your Hewlett-Packard service representative.

# To Configure a 100VG-AnyLAN Network Interface

The 100VG-AnyLAN Configuration screen (#287) in Figure 6-5 is displayed when you press the **[Config Network]** key at the Network Transport Configuration screen (#42) with an NI type of 8 (100VG-AnyLAN). Refer to Chapter 5, "Introductory Screens," for information on the Network Transport Configuration screen.

Figure 6-5 100VG-AnyLAN Configuration Screen

		• □
NMMGR/3000 (B.06.00) #287 100VG LAN Configuration	Data:	N 🛆
Fill in the required information; then press the Save Data key.		
Node name (First 50 chars) DTSXL1.CUP.HP.COM		H
Network Interface (NI) name [		
IP address [] IP subnet mask [] (optional) Proxy node [N] (Y/N)		
Link name [		
Physical path of device adapter [] Enable Ethernet? [Y] (Y/N) Enable IEEE802.3? [Y] (Y/N)		
Press Neighbor Gateways to configure neighbor gateways, if any. If done configuring, press the Validate Netxport key. Type "open" on the command line and press enter to configure the direct	ory.	
File: TNMCONF.PUB.SYS		V
List Delete Read Neighbor Validate Save Help	Prior	
NIS NI Other NIGateways Netxport Data	Scree	$n \mid $

- Step 1. In the IP address field, enter the internet protocol (IP) address for the node being configured. An example of an address is: C 192.191.191 009.
- **Step 2.** The IP subnet mask is optional. If entering one, tab to the IP subnet mask field and enter the number in the same format as an IP address.
- **Step 3.** Move to the Link name field. Enter a link name to represent the 100VG-AnyLAN card for which you are configuring a link. This name must be unique to the node.
- Step 4. Tab down to the field called Physical path of device adapter.
- **Step 5.** Press the **[Save Data]** key to save the 100VG-AnyLAN link configuration. If you need to identify neighbor gateways, press the **[Neighbor Gateways]** key and proceed to the section in this chapter called

<ul> <li>"To Identify Neighbor Gateways." Otherwise, proceed to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," and press the [Validate Netxport] key.</li> <li>Optional Keys</li> <li>Press the [Delete NI] key to list the names and types of already configured network interfaces.</li> <li>Press the [Delete NI] key to remove a configured network interface from the configuration file.</li> <li>Press the [Read Other NI] key to call up a previously configured Network Interface name.</li> <li>Fields</li> <li>Node name</li> <li>Display only.</li> <li>Network Interface NI) name</li> <li>Display only.</li> <li>IP address</li> <li>The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The network portion must be the same for all nodes on a LAN network; the node portion must be <i>unique</i> for all nodes on a LAN network.</li> <li>There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:</li> <li>Enter only the network (mm) and node (xx) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).</li> <li>You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:</li> <li>Class A, B, C</li> <li>Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:</li> </ul>		Configuring a LAN, <sup>-</sup> To Configure a 100	Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node VG-AnyLAN Network Interface				
Optional Keys       Press the [List Nis] key to list the names and types of already configured network interfaces.         Press the [Delete NI] key to remove a configured network interface from the configuration file.       Press the [Read Other NI] key to call up a previously configured Network Interface name.         Fields       Node name       Display only.         Network       Interface NI)         name       Display only.         IP address       The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The network portion must be the same for all nodes on a LAN network.         There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:       I. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).         OR       ?       Enter only the network (mm) and node (xxx) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).         You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:       • Class A, B, C         • Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:		"To Identify No "Validating Ne and press the	eighbor Gateways." Otherwise, proceed to Chapter 10, etwork Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," [Validate Netxport] key.				
<ul> <li>Press the [List Nis] key to list the names and types of already configured network interfaces.</li> <li>Press the [Delete NI] key to remove a configured network interface from the configuration file.</li> <li>Press the [Read Other NI] key to call up a previously configured Network Interface name.</li> <li>Fields</li> <li>Node name</li> <li>Display only.</li> <li>Network Interface NI)</li> <li>name</li> <li>Display only.</li> <li>IP address</li> <li>The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The network portion must be the same for all nodes on a LAN network.</li> <li>There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:</li> <li>Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).</li> <li>OR</li> <li>Enter only the network (num) and node (xxx) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).</li> <li>You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:         <ul> <li>Class A, B, C</li> <li>Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		Optional Key	A 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2				
Press the [Delete NI] key to remove a configured network interface from the configuration file.       Press the [Read Other NI] key to call up a previously configured Network Interface name.         Fields       Node name       Display only.         Network       Interface NI)       name         Display only.       IP address       The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The network portion must be the same for all nodes on a LAN network.         There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:       I. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).         OR       2. Enter only the network (nnn) and node (xxx) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).         You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:       Class A, B, C         Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address for MARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complet formats are:			Press the [List NIS] key to list the names and types of already configured network interfaces.				
Fields       Node name       Display only.         Network       Interface NI)         name       Display only.         IP address       The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The network portion must be the same for all nodes on a LAN network.         There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:       I. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).         OR       2. Enter only the network (mm) and node (xxx) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).         You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:       • Class A, B, C         • Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:			Press the <b>[Delete NI]</b> key to remove a configured network interface from the configuration file.				
Fields       Node name       Display only.         Network Interface NI) name       Display only.         IP address       The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The network portion must be the same for all nodes on a LAN network; the node portion must be unique for all nodes on a LAN network.         There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:         1. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).         OR         2. Enter only the network (nnn) and node (xxx) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).         You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:         • Class A, B, C         • Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:			Press the <b>[Read Other NI]</b> key to call up a previously configured Network Interface name.				
Network Interface NI) name       Display only.         IP address       The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The network portion must be the same for all nodes on a LAN network; the node portion must be unique for all nodes on a LAN network.         There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:         1. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009). OR         2. Enter only the network (mm) and node (xxx) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98). You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:         • Class A, B, C         • Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:	Fields	Node name	Display only.				
<ul> <li>Display only.</li> <li>IP address The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The network portion must be the same for all nodes on a LAN network; the node portion must be unique for all nodes on a LAN network.</li> <li>There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:</li> <li>1. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009). OR</li> <li>2. Enter only the network (nnn) and node (xxx) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98). You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in: <ul> <li>Class A, B, C</li> <li>Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		Network Interface NI	г)				
<ul> <li>IP address The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The network portion must be the same for all nodes on a LAN network; the node portion must be unique for all nodes on a LAN network.</li> <li>There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:</li> <li>1. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009). OR</li> <li>2. Enter only the network (nnn) and node (xxx) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98). You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:</li> <li>Class A, B, C</li> <li>Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP addresss from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:</li> </ul>		name	Display only.				
<ul> <li>There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:</li> <li>1. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009). OR</li> <li>2. Enter only the network (<i>nnn</i>) and node (<i>xxx</i>) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98). You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in: <ul> <li>Class A, B, C</li> <li>Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		IP address	The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The <b>network</b> portion must be the <i>same</i> for all nodes on a LAN network; the <b>node</b> portion must be <i>unique</i> for all nodes on a LAN network.				
<ol> <li>Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).</li> <li>OR</li> <li>Enter only the network (<i>nnn</i>) and node (<i>xxx</i>) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).</li> <li>You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:         <ul> <li>Class A, B, C</li> <li>Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP addresss HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:</li> </ul> </li> </ol>		There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:					
<ul> <li>OR</li> <li>2. Enter only the network (<i>nnn</i>) and node (<i>xxx</i>) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98). You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in: <ul> <li>Class A, B, C</li> <li>Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		1. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).					
<ul> <li>2. Enter only the network (<i>nnn</i>) and node (<i>xxx</i>) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98). You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in: <ul> <li>Class A, B, C</li> <li>Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address</li> </ul> </li> <li>HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:</li> </ul>		OR					
<ul> <li>You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:</li> <li>Class A, B, C</li> <li>Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address</li> <li>HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses</li> <li>from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:</li> </ul>		2. Enter only the network ( <i>nnn</i> ) and node ( <i>xxx</i> ) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).					
<ul> <li>Class A, B, C</li> <li>Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:</li> </ul>		You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:					
• Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:		• Class A, B, C					
HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:		• Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address.					
		HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:					
Class A nnn xxx xxx xxx			Class A nnn xxx.xxx.xxx				

	B nnn.nnn xxx.xxx
	C nnn.mmm.mmm xxx
Where:	nnn = the network portion of the IP address and xxx = the node portion of the IP address.

For Class C, the node portion of the IP address must be between 001 and 254.

If you are adding your NS 3000/iX node to an existing network, the network portion of each node's IP address should be the same. You will have to find out what this is, and use it in the network portion of the IP address of your NS 3000/iX node. Also, you will need to know the node portions of the IP addresses of each of the nodes (usually they will be numbered sequentially, such as 001, 002, and so on), so that you can specify a unique node portion for the IP address of your node. If you have a network map, it should provide a record of such items as the node name and IP address of each node. If there is no record, and if you want to find out each node's IP address, you will have to issue the following command (NM capability required) on each of the nodes:

NETCONTROL NET=NIname; STATUS

One of the lines of output from this command tells you what the complete IP address is for that node; the last three digits are the unique node portion of the class C address.

To obtain a class B or C IP address, contact Government Systems, Incorporated (GSI). To obtain an application form, write GSI at the address below. Allow at least eight working days for GSI to process an IP address request.

> Government Systems, Inc. Attn: Network Information Center 7990 Boeing Ct. Vienna, VA 22183 (800) 364-3642 (703) 821-6161

IP subnet mask

NOTE

An IP subnet mask is specified in the same format as an IP address. The 32-bit mask is grouped in octets expressed as decimal integers and delimited by either a period (.) or a space. An IP mask is used when configuring subnetworks. The mask identifies which bits of an IP address will be used to define a subnetwork. To determine these bits, you first need to estimate how many subnetworks and nodes per subnetwork you need. See Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts," for details on deriving an IP subnet mask.

107

Configuring a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node To Configure a 100VG-AnyLAN Network Interface

- Proxy node Establishing a proxy node is a way of placing node name and address mapping information in a single location. If you are configuring an internetwork or a network with non-HP nodes, it may be easier to update your configurations if you have them located in a central place, that is, the proxy node. On an internetwork, the proxy node is usually a gateway. (It is not necessary to configure a proxy node if you have configured domain names. See Chapter 12, "Configuring Domain Name Files," for information on domain names.)
- Link name The link name can have up to eight alphanumeric characters and the first character must be alphabetic.

Physical Path of

LANIC The physical path number corresponds to the slot location of a node's local area network interface controller (LANIC) card. Recommended slot locations and physical path calculations vary according to the type of HP 3000 system you are running. If you are unsure of the slot location or of the physical path number to configure for your system, see your system documentation or consult your Hewlett-Packard service representative.

Enable Ethernet?

A  $\Upsilon$  in this field enables ethernet for the LAN. You can enable either ethernet or IEEE 802.3 or both simultaneously. One or the other must be enabled (both fields may not be set to N). Ethernet is enabled by default.

Disabling Ethernet has the effect of disabling the ARP protocol as well and you will need to handle name to IP address resolution by other means.

#### Enable

IEEE 802.3? A Y in this field enables IEEE 802.3 for the LAN. You can enable either IEEE 802.3 or ethernet or both simultaneously. One or the other must be enabled (both fields may not be set to N). IEEE 802.3 is enabled by default.

Disabling IEEE 802.3 has the effect of disabling the probe protocol as well and you will need to handle name to IP address resolution by other means.

#### To Configure a 100Base-T Network Interface

The 100Base-T Configuration screen (#297) in Figure 6-6 is displayed when you press the **[Config Network]** key at the Network Transport Configuration screen (#42) with an NI type of 9 (100Base-T). Refer to Chapter 5, "Introductory Screens," for information on the Network Transport Configuration screen.

Figure 6-6100Base-T Configuration Screen



- Step 1. In the IP address field, enter the internet protocol (IP) address for the node being configured. An example of an address is: C 192.191.191 009.
- **Step 2.** The IP subnet mask is optional. If entering one, tab to the IP subnet mask field and enter the number in the same format as an IP address.
- **Step 3.** The proxy node is optional. Enter Y only if your network has internetworks (networks with gateways) or non-HP nodes and you are not using domain name services.
- **Step 4.** Move to the Link name field. Enter a link name to represent the LAN card for which you are configuring a link. This name must be unique to the node.
- Step 5. Tab down to the field called Physical path of device adapter.

Configuring a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node **To Configure a 100Base-T Network Interface** 

- **Step 6.** Tab down to the field called Enable Ethernet (Y/N). By default, ethernet is enabled. Change the field to N if you *do not* want ethernet enabled.
- Step 7. Tab down to field called Enable IEEE 802.3 (Y/N). By default, IEEE 802.3 is enabled. Change the field to N if you *do not* want IEEE 802.3 enabled.
- **Step 8.** Press the **[Save Data]** key to save the LAN link configuration. If you need to identify neighbor gateways, press the **[Neighbor Gateways]** key and proceed to the section in this chapter called "To Identify Neighbor Gateways." Otherwise, proceed to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," and press the **[Validate Netxport]** key.

Optional Keys

Press the **[List NIs]** key to list the names and types of already configured network interfaces.

Press the **[Delete NI]** key to remove a configured network interface from the configuration file.

Press the **[Read Other NI]** key to call up a previously configured Network Interface name.

Fields Node name Display only.

Network Interface NI)

name Display only.

IP address The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The **network** portion must be the *same* for all nodes on a LAN network; the **node** portion must be *unique* for all nodes on a LAN network.

There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:

1. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).

OR

2. Enter only the network (*nnn*) and node (*xxx*) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).

You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:

- Class A, B, C
- Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address.

HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:

	Class	A nnn xxx.xxx.xxx
		B nnn.nnn xxx.xxx
		C nnn.mmm.mmm xxx
	Where:	nnn = the network portion of the IP address and $xxx =$ the node portion of the IP address.
For Class C, th and 254.	e node p	ortion of the IP address must be between 001
If you are addi network portion have to find out address of your portions of the numbered seques specify a unique have a network node name and want to find out following comments	ng your I on of each t what th r NS 3000 IP addre uentially, ue node p k map, it d IP addre it each no nand (NM	NS 3000/iX node to an existing network, the node's IP address should be the same. You will his is, and use it in the network portion of the IP 0/iX node. Also, you will need to know the node esses of each of the nodes (usually they will be such as 001, 002, and so on), so that you can ortion for the IP address of your node. If you should provide a record of such items as the ess of each node. If there is no record, and if you ode's IP address, you will have to issue the A capability required) on each of the nodes:
NETCONTROL 1	NET=NInd	ame ; STATUS
One of the line complete IP ad node portion of	s of outpo dress is f f the class	ut from this command tells you what the for that node; the last three digits are the unique s C address.
To obtain a cla Incorporated ( address below. IP address req	ss B or C GSI). To c Allow at uest.	IP address, contact Government Systems, obtain an application form, write GSI at the least eight working days for GSI to process an
	G A 79 V (8	overnment Systems, Inc. ttn: Network Information Center 990 Boeing Ct. ienna, VA 22183 800) 364-3642 (703) 821-6161
IP subnet mask	An IP s an IP ac express period (	ubnet mask is specified in the same format as ddress. The 32-bit mask is grouped in octets ed as decimal integers and delimited by either a (.) or a space. An IP mask is used when

NOTE

configuring subnetworks. The mask identifies which bits of an IP address will be used to define a subnetwork. To determine these bits, you first need to estimate how many subnetworks and nodes per subnetwork you need. See Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts," for details on deriving an IP subnet mask.

Proxy node Establishing a proxy node is a way of placing node name and address mapping information in a single location. If you are configuring an internetwork or a network with non-HP nodes, it may be easier to update your configurations if you have them located in a central place, that is, the proxy node. On an internetwork, the proxy node is usually a gateway. (It is not necessary to configure a proxy node if you have configured domain names. See Chapter 12, "Configuring Domain Name Files," for information on domain names.)

Link name The link name can have up to eight alphanumeric characters and the first character must be alphabetic.

Physical Path of

- LANIC The physical path number corresponds to the slot location of a node's local area network interface controller (LANIC) card. Recommended slot locations and physical path calculations vary according to the type of HP 3000 system you are running. If you are unsure of the slot location or of the physical path number to configure for your system, see your system documentation or consult your Hewlett-Packard service representative.
- Enable Ethernet?

A  $\Upsilon$  in this field enables ethernet for the LAN. You can enable either ethernet or IEEE 802.3 or both simultaneously. One or the other must be enabled (both fields may not be set to N). Ethernet is enabled by default.

Disabling Ethernet has the effect of disabling the ARP protocol as well and you will need to handle name to IP address resolution by other means.

Enable

IEEE 802.3? A Y in this field enables IEEE 802.3 for the LAN. You can enable either IEEE 802.3 or ethernet or both simultaneously. One or the other must be enabled (both fields may not be set to N). IEEE 802.3 is enabled by default.
Disabling IEEE 802.3 has the effect of disabling the probe protocol as well and you will need to handle name to IP address resolution by other means.

## **To Configure Neighbor Gateways**

You need to visit the next two screens only if you are configuring a non-gateway node that is on the same network as a gateway. In this case, the non-gateway node needs to know the identity of any **neighbor gateway**. Neighbor gateways can be either full or half gateways.

Gateways that are on the same network are called **neighbor gateways**. A non-gateway node on a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, or 100Base-T network may need to go through a neighbor gateway in order to send messages to an entirely different network. (Two nodes are on the same network if the **network** portion of their IP addresses are the same.) All LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN or 100Base-T nodes that are on the same network as a neighbor gateway need to know the identity of any neighbor gateways. When you configure a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, or 100Base-T node, you enter into its configuration the identity of any accessible neighbor gateways that share the same network. The identified gateways may be either full or half gateways.

You may designate gateways as **default gateways**. Messages for a network will be routed to a default gateway if there is no gateway configured for the destination network. The default gateway will then attempt to locate the destination of the message.

# To Identify Neighbor Gateways (If Any Are Present)

The Neighbor Gateways screen (#152) in Figure 6-7 is displayed when you press the **[Neighbor Gateways]** key at the selected configuration screen for the LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, and 100Base-T via screen numbers 41, 49, 201, 296, and 306 respectively.



### Figure 6-7 Neighbor Gateways Screen

- **Step 1.** In the Gateway name field, enter the name of a gateway that is on the *same network* as the node that you are configuring. (Nodes are on the same network if the network portions of their IP addresses are the same.).
- Step 2. If you are adding the identified gateway for the first time, press the [Add] key. If you are modifying the configuration of this node, press the [Modify] key. The Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks screen will be displayed. Proceed to "Identify Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks."
- **Step 3.** Repeat steps 1 and 2 for each gateway that is on the same network as the node that you are configuring. When you have finished, press the [**Next Screen**] key to return to the selected configuration screen (LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, or 100Base-T) and proceed to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN,"
- Fields Gateway name Each gateway name can be as long as eight alphanumeric characters. The first character must be alphabetic.

# To Identify Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks

The Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks screen (#158) in Figure 6-8 is displayed when you press the [Add] or [Modify] key for a valid gateway name from the Neighbor Gateways screen (#152) in Figure 6-7.

Figure 6-8 Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks Screen



- Step 1. In the Neighbor Gateway IP Internet Address field, enter the IP
   address of the gateway specified on the Neighbor Gateways screen.
   C 192.191.191 009 is a typical address.
- **Step 2.** In the IP Network Address fields under the title Configured Reachable Networks, enter the IP addresses of all the *remote* networks that can be reached through the gateway whose IP address is configured in the previous field. If you want to designate this gateway as a default gateway, enter an at sign (@) in one of the fields as well.
- **Step 3.** The IP subnet mask is optional. If entering one, tab to the next field. In the IP subnet mask field, enter the number in the same format as an IP address.
- **Step 4.** In the field labeled Hops, enter the number of hops (full gateways) needed to get to the target network. Two partner gateway halves count as one hop.

- Step 5. Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 for each remote reachable network. The information configured in this screen can extend to more than one page, if necessary, to allow configuration of up to 2550 reachable networks per link (255 pages and 10 reachable nets per page). If you need to configure more than 10 networks, press the [Save Data] key then press the [Next Page] key to enter more networks.
- **Step 6.** After you have finished entering the IP addresses of all the reachable networks, press the **[Save Data]** key. Press the **[Prior Screen]** key to return to the Neighbor Gateways screen.
- Step 7. Back at the Neighbor Gateways screen, after you have finished adding all of the neighboring gateways, press the [Prior Screen] key to return to the selected configuration screen (LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, or 100Base-T). Proceed to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN,"

Fields If you have identified any neighbor gateways, then you will also be identifying: 1) the *IP Network Addresses* of all of the networks that you can reach through that gateway, and 2) the *number of hops* (corresponding to the number of gateways) that a packet passes through to reach a remote network from the local network. Two gateway halves count as one hop.

```
Neighbor Gateway
IP Internet
```

Address The IP address of the gateway whose name you have specified on the Neighbor Gateways Screen. The IP address is in the same format as the selected configuration screen (LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, or 100Base-T).

IP Network

Address In the fields under this heading, you list the IP addresses of all of the networks that you will be able to reach through the gateway you are configuring. You also use this field to indicate whether or not the gateway is to serve as a default gateway by entering an at sign (@) to specify that it is a default gateway. Only one gateway can be designated as a default gateway for each HP 3000 Series 900 system.

IP Mask

- (Optional) The fields under this heading allow you to specify a subnet mask for each reachable network. This mask is optional.
- Hops In the fields under this heading, enter the number of hops corresponding to the number of gateways that a packet travels to reach a remote network from a local network.

Configuring a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node **To Configure Neighbor Gateways** 

## **Configuring a Point-to-Point Node**

This chapter provides step-by-step instructions for configuring Point-to-Point links. (Point-to-Point links are sometimes referred to as **router** links.) This manual assumes that you are using the guided configuration capabilities of NMMGR.

Figure 7-1 shows the screen flow for configuring Point-to-Point screens. Screens unique to Point-to-Point configuration are indicated by bold boxed screens. [FUNCTION] denotes the function key used at a screen to invoke the next screen on the screen flow.

Figure 7-1 Point-to-Point Link Configuration Screen Flow



Before using NMMGR to configure a link, you should complete the worksheets provided. See Chapter 4, "Planning for Node Configuration," for more information on planning your configuration and filling out the configuration worksheets.

This chapter includes step-by-step instructions to help you perform the following tasks:

- Begin the configuration process.
- Configure a Point-to-Point network interface.
- Configure neighbor gateways.
- Configure node mapping.

Once the above tasks are completed, refer to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," for step-by-step instructions to help you perform the following validation tasks:

- Validate the network transport configuration.
- Cross-validate in SYSGEN.

### To Configure a Point-to-Point Network Interface

The Point-to-Point Configuration screen (#44) in Figure 7-2 is displayed when you press the **[Config Network]** key at the Network Transport Configuration screen (#42) with an NI type of 2 (Point-to-Point). Refer Chapter 5, "Introductory Screens," for information on the Network Transport Configuration screen.

Figure 7-2 Point-to-Point Link Configuration Screen

	• 🗆			
WMMGR/3000 (B.06.00) #44 Point-to-point Link Configuration Dat	.a:Y ≙			
fill in the required information; then press the Save Data key.				
conmante:				
Node Name (First 50 chars) ALPHA.ARPA.DOM.COM	■ ┞┦			
Network interface (NI) name: [PTPTO] IP address [] IP subnet mask [] (optio	onal)			
$\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $	all ink			
Press the Neighbor Gateways key to configure neighbor gateways, if any. To configure router mapping enter Link Name []; then press Link Routing. File: NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS				
List Delete Read Neighbor Link Save Help Pr	ior			
NIS   NI  Other NI Gateways   Routing   Data   Sc	reen			

- Step 1. In the IP address field, enter the internet protocol (IP) address for the node being configured. An example of an address is: C 192.191.191 009.
- **Step 2.** The IP subnet mask is optional. If entering one, tab to the IP subnet mask field and enter the number in the same format as an IP address.
- Step 3. Move to the Link Name field. Enter a link name to represent the Point-to-Point card for which you are configuring a link. This name must be unique to both the node and the network interface (NI). Up to 40 network links are supported per Point-to-Point (router) NI. (Up to eight network links are supported per screen. To configure additional links, save the current screen and then clear the screen to add additional links.)

Configuring a Point-to-Point Node To Configure a Point-to-Point Network Interface

- **Step 4.** Tab down to the Physical Path field. Enter the physical path number corresponding to the SPU slot number of the programmable serial interface (PSI) card.
- **Step 5.** Tab to the Speed field. Enter the line transmission speed of this link.
- **Step 6.** Tab to the Type field. Enter DD for direct dial, SD for shared dial or DC for direct connection.
- Step 7. Press the [Save Data] key to record the data you have entered.
- **Step 8.** If you need to identify neighbor gateways, press the [Neighbor Gateways] key and proceed to the section in this chapter called "To Configure Neighbor Gateways."
- **Step 9.** If you have already configured neighbor gateways for this link or your network contains no neighbor gateways, press the **[Link Routing]** key and proceed to the section in this chapter titled "To Configure Node Mapping."

Optional Keys

Press the **[List NIs]** key to list the names and types of already configured network interfaces.

Press the **[Delete NI]** key to remove a configured network interface from the configuration file.

Press the **[Read Other NI]** key to call up a previously configured Network Interface name.

 Fields
 Node name
 Display only.

 Network
 Interface
 Display only.

 Interface
 (NI) name
 Display only.

 IP address
 The IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The network portion must be the same for all nodes on a LAN network; the node portion must be

There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:

unique for all nodes on a LAN network.

1. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).

OR

2. Enter only the network (*nnn*) and node (*xxx*) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).

You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:

- Class A, B, C
- Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address.

HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:

Where:	nnn = the network portion of the IP address and $xxx =$ the node portion of the IP address.
	C nnn.mmm.mmm xxx
	B nnn.nnn xxx.xxx
Class	A nnn xxx.xxx.xxx

For Class C, the node portion of the IP address must be between 001 and 254.

If you are adding your NS 3000/iX node to an existing network, the network portion of each node's IP address should be the same. You will have to find out what this is, and use it in the network portion of the IP address of your NS 3000/iX node. Also, you will need to know the node portions of the IP addresses of each of the nodes (usually they will be numbered sequentially, such as 001, 002, and so on), so that you can specify a unique node portion for the IP address of your node. If you have a network map, it should provide a record of such items as the node name and IP address of each node. If there is no record, and if you want to find out each node's IP address, you will have to issue the following command (NM capability required) on each of the nodes:

NETCONTROL NET=NIname;STATUS

One of the lines of output from this command tells you what the complete IP address is for that node; the last three digits are the unique node portion of the class C address.

NOTE

To obtain a class B or C IP address, contact Government Systems, Incorporated (GSI). To obtain an application form, write GSI at the address below. Allow at least eight working days for GSI to process an IP address request.

> Government Systems, Inc. Attn: Network Information Center 7990 Boeing Ct. Vienna, VA 22183 (800) 364-3642 (703) 821-6161

### Configuring a Point-to-Point Node To Configure a Point-to-Point Network Interface

IP subnet mask	An IP subnet mask is specified in the same format as an IP address. The 32-bit mask is grouped in octets expressed as decimal integers and delimited by either a period (.) or a space. An IP mask is used when configuring subnetworks. The mask identifies which bits of an IP address will be used to define a subnetwork. To determine these bits, you first need to estimate how many subnetworks and nodes per subnetwork you need. See Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts," for details on deriving an IP subnet mask.
Link name	The link name can have up to eight alphanumeric characters and the first character must be alphabetic.
Physical Pat	The physical path number corresponds to the slot location of a node's programmable serial interface (PSI) card. Recommended slot locations and physical path calculations vary according to the type of HP 3000 system you are running. If you are unsure of the slot location or of the physical path number to configure for your system, see your system documentation or consult your Hewlett-Packard service representative.
Speed	The line transmission speed is given in bits per second. For direct connect the value, must be supported by the cable. Values are 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 56000, and 64000. The default is 56000.
Туре	Enter DD (direct dial) if you always want to call the same host over a dial link. If you choose DD the remote host does not have to be adjacent and other nodes can be accessed through the remote host. Enter SD if you want to call more than one adjacent remote node over a dial link without reconfiguring. If you choose SD, no other remote nodes can be accessed through the remote host; it is an end point in the connection. Enter DC if the link is a leased line, private line, or other non-switched link.

## **To Configure Neighbor Gateways**

You need to visit the next two screens only if you are configuring a non-gateway node that is on the same network as a gateway. In this case, the non-gateway node needs to know the identity of any **neighbor gateway**. Neighbor gateways can be either full or half gateways.

Gateways that are on the same network are called **neighbor gateways**. A non-gateway node on a Point-to-Point network may need to go through a neighbor gateway in order to send messages to an entirely different network. (Two nodes are on the same network if the **network** portion of their IP addresses are the same.) All Point-to-Point nodes that are on the same network as a neighbor gateway need to know the identity of any neighbor gateways. When you configure a Point-to-Point node, you enter into its configuration the identity of any accessible neighbor gateways that share the same network. The identified gateways may be either full or half gateways.

You may designate one gateway as a **default gateway**. Messages for a network will be routed to the default gateway if there is no gateway configured for the destination network. The default gateway will then attempt to locate the destination of the message.

# **To Identify Neighbor Gateways (If Any Are Present)**

The Neighbor Gateways screen (#152) in Figure 7-3 is displayed when you press the **[Neighbor Gateways]** key at the Point-to-Point Link Configuration screen (#44) in Figure 7-2.

Figure 7-3 Neighbor Gateway Screen

	•
NMMGR/3000 (V.uu.ff) #152 Neighbor Gateways	
Command:	
Path: NETXPORT.NI.NINAME.INTERNET	
Gateway name [100000] New name [100000] (for rename)	
Configured Gateways	
	]
	j
	]
	j
File: NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS	
NextPrevDeleteRenameAddModifyHelpPPagePageS	rior creen

- **Step 1.** In the Gateway name field, enter the name of a gateway that is on the *same network* as the node that you are configuring. (Nodes are on the same network if the network portions of their IP addresses are the same.).
- Step 2. If you are adding the identified gateway for the first time, press the [Add] key. If you are modifying the configuration of this node, press the [Modify] key. The Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks screen will be displayed. Proceed to the section in this chapter titled "To Identify Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks."
- Step 3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for each gateway that is on the same network as the node that you are configuring. When you have finished, press the [Prior Screen] key to return to the Point-to-Point Configuration screen and proceed to the section in this chapter titled "To Configure Node Mapping."
- Fields Gateway name Each gateway name can be as long as eight alphanumeric characters. The first character must be alphabetic.

# To Identify Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks

The Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks screen (#158) in figure 7-4 is displayed when you press the [Add] key or the [Modify] key for a valid gateway name from the Neighbor Gateways screen (#152) in Figure 7-3.

Figure 7-4 Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks



- **Step 1.** In the Neighbor Gateway IP Internet Address field, enter the IP address of the gateway specified on the Neighbor Gateways screen. An example of an address is: C 192.191.191 009.
- **Step 2.** In the IP Network Address fields under the title Configured Reachable Networks, enter the IP addresses of all the *remote* networks that can be reached through the gateway whose IP address is configured in the previous field.
- **Step 3.** The IP subnet mask is optional. If entering one, tab to the next field. In the IP subnet mask field, enter the number in the same format as an IP address.
- **Step 4.** In the field labeled Hops, enter the number of hops (full gateways) needed to get to the target network. Two partner gateway halves count as one hop.
- **Step 5.** Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 for each remote reachable network. **The information configured in this screen can extend to more than one page, if necessary, to allow configuration of up to 2550**

**reachable networks per link (255 pages and 10 reachable nets per page)**. If you need to configure more than 10 networks, press the **[Save Data]** key then press the **[Next Page]** key to enter more networks.

- **Step 6.** After you have finished entering the IP addresses of all the reachable networks, press the **[Save Data]** key. Press the **[Prior Screen]** key to return to the Neighbor Gateways screen.
- **Step 7.** Back at the Neighbor Gateways screen, after you have finished adding all of the neighboring gateways, press the [Prior Screen] key to return to the Point-to-Point Link Configuration screen. Proceed to the section in this chapter titled "To Configure Node Mapping."
- Fields If you have identified any neighbor gateways, then you will also be identifying: 1) the *IP Network Addresses* of all of the networks that you can reach through that gateway, and 2) the *number of hops* (corresponding to the number of gateways) that a packet passes through to reach a remote network from the local network. Two gateway halves count as one hop.

Neighbor Gateway IP Internet			
Address	The IP address of the gateway whose name you have specified on the Neighbor Gateways Screen. The IP address is in the same format as on the Point-to-Point Configuration screen.		
IP Network			
Address	In the fields under this heading, you list the IP addresses of all of the networks that you will be able to reach through the gateway you are configuring. You also use this field to indicate whether or not the gateway is to serve as a default gateway by entering an at sign (@) to specify that it is a default gateway. Only one gateway can be designated as a default gateway for each 900 Series HP 3000 system.		
IP Mask			
(Optional)	The fields under this heading allow you to specify a subnet mask for each reachable network. This mask is optional. See Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts," for details on deriving the IP mask.		
Hops	In the fields under this heading, enter the number of hops corresponding to the number of gateways that a packet travels to reach a remote network from a local network. Note: if you choose SD, <i>no</i> other nodes can be accessed through the remote host; it is an end point in the connection. Enter DC if the link is a leased line, private line, or other non-switched link.		

## **To Configure Node Mapping**

The screens discussed in the following pages allow you to configure shared dial or direct connect and dial node mapping. These screens allow you to specify routes to target (destination) nodes and to indicate the priority of each route.

The number of mappings you enter depends on how many links are on the node you are configuring.

#### **Nodes Having Single Links**

If you are configuring a node (call it Node A) that has only one Point-to-Point link to a second node (call it Node B), you enter one route name as the mapping to the adjacent node (Node B).

If there are additional nodes attainable beyond Node B, you would only have to enter one more mapping: make up a route name, and then you can indicate the additional (non-adjacent) nodes by specifying a "wildcard" (@) in the destination IP address field of either the Dialed or Non-dialed Node Mapping Configuration screens.

#### **Nodes Having Multiple Links**

If you are configuring a node that has more than one Point-to-Point link, you could ultimately have several paths to a *non-adjacent* destination node. Hence, if this node has more than one Point-to-Point link, enter a symbolic route name for every other destination node on the network.

The route name is only used during configuration of this node, and you do not have to repeat it when you configure other nodes.

### **To Select a Node Mapping Screen**

To begin configuring node mapping, you should be at the Point-to-Point Link Configuration screen (#44) in Figure 7-2. You will configure node mapping for each link you are configuring.

- Step 1. Enter the name of a configured link in the field at the bottom of the screen next to the words To configure router mapping enter Link Name.
- Step 2. Press the [Link Routing] key.
- **Step 3.** If the Type specified for the selected link is SD, proceed to the section in this chapter titled "To Configure Shared Dial Node Mapping."
- **Step 4.** If the Type specified for the selected link is DD or DC, proceed to the section in this section titled "To Configure Direct Connect/Dial Node Mapping."

### **To Configure Shared Dial Node Mapping**

The Shared Dial Node Mapping Configuration screen (#46) in Figure 7-5is displayed if you press the **[Link Routing]** key at the Point-to-Point Link Configuration screen (#44) for a link of type SD.



NMMGR/30 Fill in Command:	00 (B.06.0 the requir	00) <b>#</b> 46 red info	Shared D rmation;	ial Node Ma then press	pping Confi the Save D	iguratio ata key.	n	Data: Y	Δ
NI name:	[L1	] Li	nk name:	[LINK1 ]	:				Н
Route <u>Name</u>	Destinati IP Addres	Lon SS	Pri- ority Pho 50 50 50 50 50 50 50 50 50 50 50 50	ne Number			Security String HP HP HP HP HP HP HP HP HP HP	Disable Route N N N N N N N N N	
Press Config Directry to configure remote node names and addresses. If done configuring, press the Validate Netxport key.									
<u>File:</u> NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS Page 1 ▼									
Next Page	Prev Page	Next Link	Config Directry		Validate Netxport	Save Data	He1p	Prior Screen	

Each router NI can have up to 1024 mappings. However, 4096 is the absolute maximum number of unique phone numbers supported per  $\tt NMCONFIG$  File.

- **Step 1.** In the Route Name field, enter a symbolic name that represents a route between the node you are configuring and destination node
- **Step 2.** In the Destination IP Address field, enter the IP address of the destination node for which a route is being specified.
- **Step 3.** In the Priority field, enter a number from 1 to 99 to indicate the priority of this route if there are multiple routes to a destination.
- **Step 4.** In the Phone Number field, enter the telephone number of the destination node. (Leave this field blank if the target node is non-adjacent.)
- **Step 5.** The Security String field is optional. You may enter a string that remote nodes must use to gain dial link access to the node you are configuring.
- **Step 6.** In the Disable Route field, leave the default alone unless you want to temporarily disable a configured route.

Step 7.	Press the [Save Data] key to save the data on the screen. Proceed to
	Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with
	SYSGEN," and press the [Validate Netxport] key.

Optional Keys

Press the **[Next Link]** key to call up another link when you want to configure information about its adjacent and non-adjacent nodes.

Press the **[Config Directry]** key to configure the Network Directory screen.

Fields

Route Name A symbolic name, up to eight alphanumeric characters, that represents a route between the node you are configuring and a destination node. The route name is only used within the NMMGR program. It is most useful when the node you are configuring has more than one possible way of accessing a target (destination) node. It identifies different routes to target nodes and is not the actual target node name. It is used because you may need a way to identify more than one route to a target node. There should be at lease one symbolic route name for routes to every other destination node on the network unless you use the "@" wildcard destination IP address.

To help keep track of routes, you can use the destination node name as the route name. If you have more than one route to a given node, you can name the routes *nodename*1, *nodename*2, and so forth.

Destination IP Address

- IP Address IP address of the target (destination) node for which a route is being defined.
- Priority Number from 1 to 99 that indicates which route has precedence (priority) over another when there are multiple routes to a destination. A route to a destination that has a higher priority will take precedence over a route with a lower priority. This field is the primary means of influencing the choice of route.
- Phone Number Required if the link is a dial link. The field must be blank if the target node is non-adjacent. Enter the telephone number as a combination of decimal numbers (0 through 9), dashes, and the following special characters:
  - / Separator used for automatic call units that have second dial-tone detect.
  - E Optional end-of-number indicator.

	D	Three-second delay (used for European modems and automatic call units that require built-in delays).
	#	Defined by local phone system.
	*	Defined by local phone system.
	To disable outbo (!) by itself in t	ound dialing, enter an exclamation point he phone number field.
	Each router NI However, 4096 unique phone n	can have up to 1024 mappings. is the absolute maximum number of numbers supported per NMCONFIG File.
Security String	An optional sec to gain dial link alphanumeric c embedded blan alphabetic.	urity string that remote nodes must use access to the node. It can be up to eight characters, left justified, with no ks. The first character must be
Disable Rout	е	
	Y (yes) or N (no)	indicator that allows you to temporarily

disable a configured route. Leave the default (N) alone if you do not want to disable the route.

### **To Configure Direct Connect/Dial Node Mapping**

The Direct Connect/Dial Node Mapping Configuration screen (#45) in Figure 7-6 is displayed if you press the **[Link Routing]** key at the Point-to-Point Link Configuration screen (#44) for a link of type DD or DC.





Each router NI can have up to 1024 mappings. However, 4096 is the absolute maximum number of unique phone numbers supported per  $\tt NMCONFIG$  File.

- **Step 1.** In the Route Name field, enter a symbolic name that represents a route between the node you are configuring and a destination node.
- **Step 2.** In the Destination IP Address field, enter the IP address of the destination node for which a route is being specified.
- **Step 3.** In the Priority field, enter a number from 1 to 99 to indicate the priority of this route if there are multiple routes to a destination.
- **Step 4.** In the Disable Route field, leave the default alone unless you want to temporarily disable a configured route.
- **Step 5.** If this is a dial link, in the Phone Number field, enter the telephone number of the destination node.
- **Step 6.** The Security String field is optional. You may enter a string that remote nodes must use to gain dial link access to the node you are configuring.
- **Step 7.** Enter information for non-adjacent (remote) nodes in the same manner in the fields provided. (You do not configure a phone number or security string for non-adjacent nodes.)
- **Step 8.** Press the **[Save Data]** key to save the data on the screen. Proceed to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," and press the **[Validate Netxport]** key.

Configuring a Point-to-Point Node **To Configure Node Mapping** 



## **Configuring an X.25 Node**

This chapter provides step-by-step instructions for configuring X.25 iX System Access for systems using PC-based network management. This manual assumes that you are using the guided configuration capabilities of NMMGR.

Figure 8-1 shows the screen flow for configuring X.25 screens. Screens unique to X.25 configuration are indicated by bold boxed screens. [FUNCTION] denotes the function key used at a screen to invoke the next screen on the screen flow.

Figure 8-1 X.25 Link Screen Flow



Before using NMMGR to configure a link, you should complete the worksheets provided. See Chapter 4, "Planning for Node Configuration," for more information on planning your configuration and filling out the configuration worksheets.

This chapter includes step-by-step instructions to help you perform the following tasks:

- Begin the configuration process.
- Configure an X.25 network interface.
- Configure neighbor gateways.

Once the above tasks are completed, refer to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," for step-by-step instructions to help you perform the following validation tasks:

- Validate the network transport configuration.
- Cross-validate in SYSGEN.

NOTEIf you are configuring X.25 iX System Access on a system that is using<br/>host-based network management (a PC running the HP OpenView<br/>Network Manager is not part of the network), use *Configuring and<br/>Managing Host-Based X.25 Links* instead of this manual for<br/>step-by-step configuration instructions.

## **To Configure an X.25 Network Interface**

The X.25 Configuration screen (#48) in Figure 8-2 is displayed when you press the **[Config Network]** key at the Network Transport Configuration screen (#42) with an NI type of 3 (X.25). Refer to Chapter 5, "Introductory Screens," for information on the Network Transport Configuration screen.

	• 🗆
NMMGR/3000 (B.06.00) #48 X.25 Configuration Fill in the required information; then press the Save Data key. Command:	Data: N ≙
Node name (first 50 chars) ALPHA.ARPA.DOM.COM	
Network Interface (NI) name [] IP address [] IP subnet mask [] (o	ptional)
Link Name DTC Node Name Card N	umber
Image: Continue:       Press Neighbor Gateways to configure gateways, if any.	
riess config birectory to configure remote x.25 hodes.	
File: NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS	V
List Delete Read Neighbor Config Save Help	Prior
NIS NI Other NIGateways Directry Data	Screen

Figure 8-2 NS Configuration Screen

- Step 1. In the IP address field, enter the internet protocol (IP) address for the node being configured. An example of an address is: C 192.191.191 009.
- **Step 2.** The IP subnet mask is optional. If entering one, tab to the IP subnet mask field and enter the number in the same format as an IP address.
- **Step 3.** Move to the first Link name field. Enter a link name to represent the DTC/X.25 Network Access card for which you are configuring a link. This name must be unique to both the node and the DTC. It must also be the same as the link name configured for this card when the Datacommunications and Terminal Subsystem (DTS) was configured.
- **Step 4.** Enter the node name of the DTC that houses the DTC/X.25 Access card in the first DTC Node Name field then enter the slot number of the card in the Card Number field. Enter a link name, DTC node name, and card number for each link you are configuring.

- **Step 5.** When you are done adding links, press the **[Save Data]** key.
- **Step 6.** If the network that this node is on contains ANY internetwork gateway (either full or half) press the **[Neighbor Gateways]** key and proceed to the section in this chapter called "To Configure Neighbor Gateways."
- Step 7. If the network that this node is on contains NO internetwork gateways or if you have already configured gateways for this system, press the [Config Directry] key and proceed to the section in this chapter titled "To Configure X.25 Virtual Circuits."

Optional Keys

Press the [List NIs] key to list the names and types of already configured network interfaces.

Press the **[Delete NI]** key to remove a configured network interface from the configuration file.

Press the **[Read Other NI]** key to call up a previously configured Network Interface name.

Fields Node Name Display only.

Network

Interface

(NI) name Display only.

IP address IP address is an address of a node on a network. An IP address has two parts: a network portion and a node portion. The **network** portion must be the *same* for all nodes on an X.25 network; the **node** portion must be *unique* for all nodes on an X.25 network.

There are two methods of entering an internet protocol (IP) address within NMMGR:

1. Enter the fully qualified IP address (for example, Class C, C 192.191.191 009).

OR

2. Enter only the network (*nnn*) and node (*xxx*) portions of the IP address as four positive integers between 0 and 255 separated by periods or blanks (for example, 15.123.44.98).

You need not enter the following items as NMMGR will fill these in:

- Class A, B, C
- Leading zeros for the network and node portion of the IP address.

HP assigns the network portion (initial nine digits) of IP addresses from ARPA Class C, though your addresses may also be of Classes A or B. The complete formats are:

Where:	nnn = the network portion of the IP address and xxx = the node portion of the IP address.
	C nnn.mmm.mmm xxx
	B nnn.nnn xxx.xxx
Class	A nnn xxx.xxx.xxx

For Class C, the node portion of the IP address must be between 001 and 254.

If you are adding your NS 3000/iX node to an existing network, the network portion of each node's IP address should be the same. You will have to find out what this is, and use it in the network portion of the IP address of your NS 3000/iX node. Also, you will need to know the node portions of the IP addresses of each of the nodes (usually they will be numbered sequentially, such as 001, 002, and so on), so that you can specify a unique node portion for the IP address of your node. If you have a network map, it should provide a record of such items as the node name and IP address of each node. If there is no record, and if you want to find out each node's IP address, you will have to issue the following command (NM capability required) on each of the nodes:

NETCONTROL NET=NIname; STATUS

One of the lines of output from this command tells you what the complete IP address is for that node; the last three digits are the unique node portion of the class C address.

NOTE

To obtain a class B or C IP address, contact Government Systems, Incorporated (GSI). To obtain an application form, write GSI at the address below. Allow at least eight working days for GSI to process an IP address request.

> Government Systems, Inc. Attn: Network Information Center 7990 Boeing Ct. Vienna, VA 22183 (800) 364-3642 (703) 821-6161

#### Configuring an X.25 Node To Configure an X.25 Network Interface

IP subnet mask	An IP subnet mask is specified in the same format as an IP address. The 32-bit mask is grouped in octets expressed as decimal integers and delimited by either a period (.) or a space. An IP mask is used when configuring subnetworks. The mask identifies which bits of an IP address will be used to define a subnetwork. To determine these bits, you first need to estimate how many subnetworks and nodes per subnetwork you need. See Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts," for details on deriving an IP subnet mask.
Link name	The link name identifies a specific DTC/X.25 Network Access card to be used for X.25 system-to-system connections. This link name must be the same as the link name you entered for this card when you configured your DTCs. You may configure up to 11 links. (One link must be used for loopback. Loopback will be automatically configured during the guided screen configuration.)
DTC Node Name	The DTC node name is the fully qualified nodename (name.domain.organization) of the DTC that contains the DTC/X.25 Network Access card with the configured link name.
Card Number	The DTC card number is the number of the DTC/X.25 Network Access card in the associated DTC. If the card is contained in a DTC 48, the DTC card number can be any number from 1 to 5. If the card is contained in a DTC 16, the card number must be 2.

### **To Configure X.25 Virtual Circuits**

The X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration screen (#47) in Figure 8-3 is displayed if you press the **[Config Directry]** key from the X.25 Configuration screen (#48) in Figure 8-2. This screen lets you configure the network directory.

Figure 8.3	X 95 Virtual	Circuit Confid	uration Screen
rigure o-s	A.25 VILLUAL	Circuit Comis	guration Screen

NMMGR/3000 (B.06.00) #47 X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration			
Fill in the required information; then press the Save Data key.			
Command:			
Network directory name [NSDIR.NET.SYS			
Remote node name			
Remote IP address			
Address key			
Network Interface (NI) name [L4]			
If address type is switched virtual circuit, then enter:			
Remote X.25 address			
Facility set [STDSFSET]			
Security class IO (IN, OU, IO, LK)			
else if address type is permanent virtual circuit, then enter:			
Permanent VC number			
lo continue:			
Configure all remote X.25 nodes on this screen. Press Save Data for each node.			
lo list or change items on any screen listed below, enter its number			
and press Go To.			
1 - Network Directory 3 - Switched VCs 5 - Permanent VCs			
2 - NIS $4 - Facility Sets$			
When done configuring, press the Validate Netxport Key.			
<u>rile:</u> NTCONFIG.FUB.SIS			
Go To Delete Validate Save Help Prior			
Addr Key Netxport Data Screen			

- Step 1. In the Remote node name field, type in the nodename of each remote X.25 node on your network in the format nodename.domain.organization. Also, if you need to be able to perform a loopback DSLINE command to the local node, then enter the local node's name here as well.
- **Step 2.** For each node, type the IP address of the node in the Remote IP address field.
- **Step 3.** To specify that calls can be made to a node, enter its address key in the Address key field. Enter the **node** portion of the remote node's configured nodename.
- NOTE An address key called POOL is already preconfigured for you though it doesn't show up on the screen. POOL allows the node being configured to receive *any* incoming calls even if the remote system's address is not configured on this screen. POOL will also allow you to use NetIPC to programmatically provide an X.25 address that is not configured on this screen. If you want to delete the POOL address key, in the last line of the X.25 Virtual Circuit Configuration screen enter a 3 (for switched VCs) and press the [Go To] key. That brings you to the X.25 SVC Address Key Paths screen where you can then remove the default name POOL by typing over it with spaces and then saving the data.
  - **Step 4.** If the address type is a switched virtual circuit complete steps a through c, but if the address type is a permanent virtual circuit, skip to step 5.

- **a.** In the Remote X.25 address field, enter the X.25 address of the remote host for X.25 public data networks or private networks.
- **b.** Make sure the name of the facility set you are using is in the Facility set field. You may either choose the default facility set (STDSFSET) or enter an alternative. If you are configuring a new facility set, enter a new name. (To modify facility set parameters, enter a 5 in the last field on the screen and press the [Go To] key.)
- **c.** In the Security class field, enter the level of logical security you want to have on this particular entry. The possible values are IN (accept calls from the address), IO (accept calls from and send calls to the address, default), OU (send calls to the address, incoming calls are rejected), and LK (block calls to or from the address).
- **Step 5.** If the address type is a permanent virtual circuit (PVC), in the Permanent VC number field, enter the PVC number of the PVC on the remote node. This value cannot be greater than the number of PVCs for which you are subscribed. It must be within the PVC range you defined during DTC configuration.
- **Step 6.** After you have finished entering new information for each remote node, press the **[Save Data]** key. (Press the key once for each remote node you are configuring.)
- **Step 7.** If you have completed configuration of X.25, press the **[Validate Netxport]** key and proceed to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN." Otherwise, press the **[Prior Screen]** key to return to the X.25 Configuration screen.

Fields	Network directory name	The network directory file that will be updated by the information entered through this screen.
	Remote node name	You must enter the remote node name of each X.25 node into the network directory. Include entries for all remote nodes and, if you want to be able to perform loopback, the local node as well.
	Remote IP address	Also in the network directory, you must enter the IP Address of each node whose identity you have entered into the network directory. For the format of this parameter, see the information in the "Fields" section under "Configure X.25 Network."
	Address key	The X.25 address key is the name of a remote node with which your local node will be communicating. Hewlett-Packard recommends that you make the name be the node portion of the remote node's name (where its full name is node.domain.organization). You

		must configure an X.25 address key for each remote node with which your node will be communicating. You have a combined maximum of 1024 X.25 address keys in the SVC and PVC path tables. The X.25 address key name must be eight characters or less and the first character must be alphabetic. A default address key called POOL allows any system to access the local system even if the remote system's address is not configured. POOL can also be used when level 3 programmatic access (NetIPC) provides an X.25 address.
	Network Interface (NI) name	Display only.
	SVC or PVC Parameters	The parameters for assigning either SVCs or PVCs are described in the following paragraphs.
For SVCs	Remote X.25 address	The remote X.25 address is the remote node's X.25 address. This address is required for SVCs if you have specified an X.25 address key. This address must be 15 digits or less.
	Facility set	The facility set name is a name for a set of X.25 connection parameters. The parameters are determined by the type of X.25 network that you are subscribed to. You can configure options in a facility set so that specified options are available for every virtual circuit or negotiated for each virtual circuit on a per-call basis. This facility set will be used when a connection is made from your node to the specified remote node or from the specified remote node to your node. A Facility Set is required for SVCs if you have specified an X.25 Address Key. The facility set name must be eight characters or less, and the first character must be alphabetic. You can configure up to 128 facility sets.
		To modify facility set parameters, enter a 5 in the field at the bottom of the screen and press the <b>[Go To]</b> key. This will take you to the X.25 User Facility Sets screen. From this screen you can create new or modify existing user facility sets. See the <i>NS 3000/iX Screens</i> <i>Reference Manual</i> for more information.

Configuring an X.25 Node **To Configure an X.25 Network Interface** 

	Security class	The security class is the level of logical security you want to have when a connection is made to or from the specified remote node. A Security level is required for SVCs if you have specified an X.25 Address Key. The possible values are as follows:
		• 10—Both incoming and outgoing calls are accepted. This is the default value.
		• IN—Only incoming calls are accepted from this particular remote address. Outgoing calls will be rejected.
		• OU—Only outgoing calls are accepted to this particular remote address. Incoming calls will be rejected.
		• LK—Entry is locked. No call is accepted, either inbound or outbound.
For PVCs	Permanent VC number	The PVC Number identifies a permanent virtual circuit (PVC) on the remote node. If you have entered a name in the X.25 Address Key field and are configuring PVCs, then you also have to enter a value for the PVC Number.

## **To Configure Neighbor Gateways**

You need to visit the next two screens only if you are configuring a non-gateway node that is on the same network as a gateway. In this case, the non-gateway node needs to know the identity of any **neighbor gateway**. Neighbor gateways can be either full or half gateways.

Gateways that are on the same network are called **neighbor gateways**. A non-gateway node on an X.25 network may need to go through a neighbor gateway in order to send messages to an entirely different network. (Two nodes are on the same network if the **network** portion of their IP addresses are the same.) All X.25 nodes that are on the same network as a neighbor gateway need to know the identity of any neighbor gateways. When you configure an X.25 node, you enter into its configuration the identity of any accessible neighbor gateways that share the same network. The identified gateways may be either full or half gateways.

You may designate gateways as **default gateways**. Messages for a network will be routed to a default gateway if there is no gateway configured for the destination network. The default gateway will then attempt to locate the destination of the message.

# **To Identify Neighbor Gateways (If Any Are Present)**

The Neighbor Gateways screen (#152) in Figure 8-4is displayed when you press the **[Neighbor Gateways]** key at the X.25 Configuration screen (#48) in Figure 8-2.

Figure 8-4 Neighbor Gateways Screen

	•
NMMGR/3000 (V.uu.ff) #152 Neighbor Gateways Enter the name of an item then press the desired function key.	
Command:	
Path: NETXPORT.NI.NINAME.INTERNET	
Gateway name [] New name [] (for rename)	
Configured Gateways	
	j
	j
File: NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS	
Next Prev Delete Rename Add Modify Help Pri	or
Page Page Scr	een

- **Step 1.** In the Gateway name field, enter the name of a gateway that is on the same network as the node that you are configuring. (Nodes are on the same network if the network portions of their IP addresses are the same.).
- **Step 2.** If you are adding the identified gateway for the first time, press the **[Add]** key. If you are modifying the configuration of this node, press the **[Modify]** key. The Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks screen will be displayed. Proceed to the section titled "To Identify Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks."
- **Step 3.** Repeat steps 1 and 2 for each gateway that is on the same network as the node that you are configuring. When you have finished, press the **[Prior Screen]** key to return to the X.25 Configuration screen.

Fields

Gateway name Each gateway name can be as long as eight alphanumeric characters. The first character must be alphabetic.

# **To Identify Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks**

The Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks screen (#158) in Figure 8-5 is displayed when you press the **[Add]** key or the **[Modify]** key for a valid gateway name from the Neighbor Gateways screen (#152) in Figure 8-4.



### Figure 8-5 Neighbor Gateway Reachable Networks Screen

- Step 1. In the Neighbor Gateway IP Internet Address field, enter the IP address of the gateway specified on the Neighbor Gateways screen. An example is: C 192.007.007 001
- **Step 2.** In the IP Network Address fields under the title Configured Reachable Networks, enter the IP addresses of all the remote networks that can be reached through the gateway whose IP address is configured in the previous field.
- **Step 3.** The IP subnet mask is optional. If entering one, tab to the next field. In the IP mask field, enter the number in the same format as an IP address.
- **Step 4.** In the field labeled Hops, enter the number of hops (full gateways) needed to get to the target network. Two partner gateway halves count as one hop.
- Step 5. Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 for each remote reachable network. The information configured in this screen can extend to more than one page, if necessary, to allow configuration of up to 2550 reachable networks per link (255 pages and 10 reachable nets per page). If you need to configure more than 10 networks, press the [Save Data] key then press the [Next Page] key to enter more networks.
- **Step 6.** After you have finished entering the IP addresses of all the reachable networks, press the **[Save Data]** key. Press the **[Prior Screen]** key to return to the Neighbor Gateways screen.

Configuring an X.25 Node To Configure Neighbor Gateways

FieldsIf you have identified any neighbor gateways, then you will also be identifying: 1) the IP Network Addresses of all of the networks that y can reach through that gateway, and 2) the number of hops (corresponding to the number of gateways) that a packet passes through to reach a remote network from the local network. Two gateway halves count as one hop.Neighbor Gateway IP Internet AddressThe IP address of the gateway whose name you hav specified on the Neighbor Gateways Screen. The IP address is in the same format as the LAN Configuration screen.IP Network AddressIn the fields under this heading, you list the IP addresses of all of the networks that you will be able reach through the gateway you are configuring. You also use this field to indicate whether or not the gateway is to serve as a default gateway by entering at sign (@) to specify that it is a default gateway each HP 3000 Series 900 system.IP Mask (Optional)The fields under this heading allow you to specify a subnet mask for each reachable network. This mask optional. For details on deriving an IP subnet mask, Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts."HopsIn the fields under this heading, enter the number o hops corresponding to the number of gateways that packet travels to reach a remote network from a local travels to reach a remote network from a local		Step 7.	Back at the Neighbor Gateways screen, after you have finished addin all of the neighboring gateways, press the <b>[Prior Screen]</b> key to return to the X.25 Configuration screen. Follow the instructions for step 7 in the section in this chapter titled "To Configure an X.25 Network."		
Neighbor Gateway IP InternetAddressThe IP address of the gateway whose name you hav specified on the Neighbor Gateways Screen. The IP address is in the same format as the LAN Configuration screen.IP NetworkAddressAddressIn the fields under this heading, you list the IP addresses of all of the networks that you will be able reach through the gateway you are configuring. You also use this field to indicate whether or not the gateway is to serve as a default gateway by entering at sign (@) to specify that it is a default gateway. On 	Fields		If you have identified any neighbor gateways, then you will also be identifying: 1) the IP Network Addresses of all of the networks that you can reach through that gateway, and 2) the number of hops (corresponding to the number of gateways) that a packet passes through to reach a remote network from the local network. Two gateway halves count as one hop.		
IP InternetAddressThe IP address of the gateway whose name you hav specified on the Neighbor Gateways Screen. The IP address is in the same format as the LAN Configuration screen.IP NetworkIn the fields under this heading, you list the IP addresses of all of the networks that you will be able reach through the gateway you are configuring. You also use this field to indicate whether or not the gateway is to serve as a default gateway by entering at sign (@) to specify that it is a default gateway. On one gateway can be designated as a default gateway each HP 3000 Series 900 system.IP Mask (Optional)The fields under this heading allow you to specify a subnet mask for each reachable network. This mask optional. For details on deriving an IP subnet mask, Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts."HopsIn the fields under this heading, enter the number of hops corresponding to the number of gateways that 			Neighbor Gat	eway	
IP NetworkAddressIn the fields under this heading, you list the IP addresses of all of the networks that you will be able reach through the gateway you are configuring. You also use this field to indicate whether or not the gateway is to serve as a default gateway by entering at sign (@) to specify that it is a default gateway. On one gateway can be designated as a default gateway each HP 3000 Series 900 system.IP Mask (Optional)The fields under this heading allow you to specify a subnet mask for each reachable network. This mask optional. For details on deriving an IP subnet mask, Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts."HopsIn the fields under this heading, enter the number of hops corresponding to the number of gateways that packet travels to reach a remote network from a local			IP Internet Address	The IP address of the gateway whose name you have specified on the Neighbor Gateways Screen. The IP address is in the same format as the LAN Configuration screen.	
AddressIn the fields under this heading, you list the IP addresses of all of the networks that you will be able reach through the gateway you are configuring. You also use this field to indicate whether or not the gateway is to serve as a default gateway by entering at sign (@) to specify that it is a default gateway. On one gateway can be designated as a default gateway each HP 3000 Series 900 system.IP Mask (Optional)The fields under this heading allow you to specify a subnet mask for each reachable network. This mask optional. For details on deriving an IP subnet mask, Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts."HopsIn the fields under this heading, enter the number of hops corresponding to the number of gateways that 			IP Network		
<ul> <li>IP Mask         <ul> <li>(Optional)</li> <li>The fields under this heading allow you to specify a subnet mask for each reachable network. This mask optional. For details on deriving an IP subnet mask, Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts."</li> </ul> </li> <li>Hops</li> <li>In the fields under this heading, enter the number of hops corresponding to the number of gateways that packet travels to reach a remote network from a local statement.</li> </ul>			Address	In the fields under this heading, you list the IP addresses of all of the networks that you will be able to reach through the gateway you are configuring. You also use this field to indicate whether or not the gateway is to serve as a default gateway by entering an at sign (@) to specify that it is a default gateway. Only one gateway can be designated as a default gateway for each HP 3000 Series 900 system.	
<ul> <li>(Optional) The fields under this heading allow you to specify a subnet mask for each reachable network. This mask optional. For details on deriving an IP subnet mask, Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts."</li> <li>Hops In the fields under this heading, enter the number of hops corresponding to the number of gateways that packet travels to reach a remote network from a local structure of the second structure of the second</li></ul>			IP Mask		
Hops In the fields under this heading, enter the number of hops corresponding to the number of gateways that packet travels to reach a remote network from a loca			(Optional)	The fields under this heading allow you to specify a subnet mask for each reachable network. This mask is optional. For details on deriving an IP subnet mask, see Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts."	
network.			Hops	In the fields under this heading, enter the number of hops corresponding to the number of gateways that a packet travels to reach a remote network from a local network.	
# **Configuring a Gateway Half**

This chapter describes how to configure the interface between one gateway half and another gateway half. Gateway halves are one of the methods you can use to interconnect two separate networks. For information on configuring a node that is not a gateway half, use this manual.

Figure 9-1 shows the screen flow for configuring gateway half screens. Screens unique to gateway half configuration are indicated by bold boxed screens. [FUNCTION] denotes the function key used at a screen to invoke the next screen on the screen flow.



Figure 9-1 Gateway Half Link Screen Flow

Configuring a node as a gateway half requires configuring two separate network interfaces: one for the interface between the two gateway halves, and a second for the gateway half's interface to its home network.

If this gateway half interfaces to a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, or 100Base-T network, you should have already configured its network interface according to the instructions in Chapter 6, "Configuring a LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, 100Base-T Node." If this gateway half interfaces to a Point-to-Point or X.25 network, you should already have configured its NI according to instructions in Chapter 7, "Configuring a Point-to-Point Node," and Chapter 8, "Configuring an X.25 Node," respectively. If you have not, do so now and then return to this chapter.

This chapter includes step-by-step instructions to help you perform the following tasks:

- Begin the configuration process.
- Configure a gatehalf.

Once the above tasks are completed, refer to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," for step-by-step instructions to help you perform the following validation tasks:

- Validate the network transport configuration.
- Cross-validate in SYSGEN.

## **To Configure a Gatehalf Network Interface**

The Gatehalf Configuration screen (#40) in Figure 9-2 is displayed when you press the **[Config Network]** key at the Network Transport Configuration screen (#42) with an NI type of 5 (Gateway Half). Refer to Chapter 5, "Introductory Screens," for information on the Network Transport Configuration screen.

Figure 9-2Gatehalf Configuration Screen



- **Step 1.** In the Partner's IP address field, enter the internet protocol (IP) address of this gateway half's partner.
- **Step 2.** The IP subnet mask is optional. If entering one, tab down to the next field. In the IP subnet mask field, enter the number in the same format as an IP address.
- **Step 3.** Tab to the Home NI name field. Enter a name that is the same as one of the LAN, Point-to-Point, or X.25 network interface names of the node being configured.
- **Step 4.** Tab down to the Link name field and enter a link name to represent each individual hardware interface card.
- **Step 5.** Tab over to the Link type field. Enter DD for direct dial or DC for leased lines, private lines, or other non-switched links.

- **Step 6.** Enter the physical path of this node's Programmable Serial Interface (PSI) card.
- **Step 7.** Tab down to the next field. In the Transmission speed field, either leave the default or enter the transmission speed in bits per second as a number from 1200 to 64000.
- **Step 8.** If this is a dial link, enter the phone number of *this* gateway half's *partner*.
- **Step 9.** If this is a dial link, in the Security string field, either leave the default, or enter a value that HP nodes must use to gain dial link access to the node you are configuring.
- **Step 10.** Press the **[Save Data]** key. Proceed to Chapter 10, "Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN," and press the **[Validate Netxport]** key.

Optional Keys

Press the **[List NIs]** key to list the names and types of already configured network interfaces.

Press the **[Delete NI]** to remove a configured network interface from the configuration file.

Press the **[Read Other NI]** key to call up a previously configured Network Interface name.

Fields

#### Partner's IP

- address This is the internet protocol (IP) address of the node that will be the other half of the gateway half you are configuring. Enter the address in the same format as on the Point-to-Point Configuration screen.
- Partner's IP
- subnet mask Allows you to specify the subnet mask of this gateway half's partner gateway half. The 32-bit mask is grouped in octets expressed as decimal integers and delimited by either a period (.) or a space. The mask identifies which bits of an IP address will be used to define a subnetwork. To determine these bits, you first need to estimate how many subnetworks and nodes per subnetwork you need. For details on deriving an IP subnet mask, see Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts."
- Home NI name The home NI name will be used by the software to determine which network address is the source network address when packets are sent over the gateway half. The home NI name cannot be either a gateway half or loopback NI name, but it can refer to any other type of network interface (LAN, Token Ring, Point-to-Point, or X.25 network interface).

Link name	Name that repr name can have the first charac must be unique	resents the hardware link. The link up to eight alphanumeric characters; ter must be alphabetic. The link name to both the node and the network.
Link type	The link type for direct dial or Do	or a gateway half can be either DD for C for direct connect.
physical pat	h	
	Chapter 8, "Con on the physical	ath of the gateway half's PSI card. See nfiguring an X.25 Node," for information path.
Transmission	1	
speed	The line transm For direct conn cable. Values an 56000, and 640	nission speed is given in bits per second. ect the value, must be supported by the re 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 00. The default is 56000.
Phone Number	Telephone num gateway half. E combination of and the followin	ber of this gateway half's partner Enter the telephone number as a decimal numbers (0 through 9), dashes, ng special characters:
	/	Separator used for automatic call units that have second dial-tone detect.
	E	Optional end-of-number indicator.
	D	Three-second delay (used for European modems and automatic call units that require built-in delays).
	#	Defined by local phone system.
	*	Defined by local phone system.
	Spaces, and left allowed.	t and right parentheses ( ) are also
	To disable outb (!) by itself in t	ound dialing, enter an exclamation point he phone number field.
Security string	This is a string characters, left first character is is required if the node (dial ID pro- use the security node you are con-	containing up to eight alphanumeric justified, with no embedded blanks. The must be alphabetic. A value in this field he remote (destination) node is an HP rotocol is used). Remote HP nodes must y string to gain dial link access to the onfiguring.

Configuring a Gateway Half To Configure a Gatehalf Network Interface

## Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN

This chapter discusses the validation of the network transport configuration and cross-validation of NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS with the system configuration files within SYSGEN.

Validating the network transport. This step checks data consistency between values entered on different NMMGR data entry screens. Cross-Validating with SYSGEN.

Cross-validation ensures that there are no conflicts in the use of node names, device classes, and physical paths.

## **To Validate the Network Transport**

The following procedure assumes that you have already configured and validated the Distributed Terminal Subsystem (DTS). The DTS must be validated before you can validate the network transport (Netxport) software. Upon configuring the selected screens for your network:

**Step 1.** Press the [Validate Netxport] key. Refer to the list of screens with the [Validate Netxport] key.

LAN — Figure 6-2 Token Ring — Figure 6-3 FDDI — Figure 6-4 100VG-AnyLAN — Figure 6-5 100Base-T — Figure 6-6 Point-to-Point Shared Dial — Figure 7-5 Point-to-Point Direct Dial — Figure 7-6 X.25 — Figure 8-3 Gateway Half — Figure 9-2 Logging — Figure 13-2

Messages similar to the following ones will be displayed:

Searching for subsystem validation routine VALIDATENETXPOR -> VALIDATION OF NETXPORT SUBSYSTEM STARTED -> VALIDATION OF NETXPORT SUBSYSTEM FINISHED Copying validated subsystems to backup configuration file (Press RETURN when done viewing screen contents)

- **Step 2.** See the *NS 3000/iX Error Messages Reference Manual* for explanations of any validation errors. After viewing the messages, press [**RETURN**] to return to the LAN, Token Ring, FDDI, 100VG-AnyLAN, and 100Base-T Configuration screen.
- **Step 3.** If you need to configure a network directory, proceed to Chapter 11, "Configuring the Network Directory." If you do not need to configure the network directory, exit NMMGR, and proceed to the section in this chapter titled "To Cross-Validate in SYSGEN." To exit NMMGR, press the [**Prior Screen**] key on successive screens until you reach the Open Configuration Directory File screen where you should press the [**Exit Program**] key.

## **To Cross-Validate in SYSGEN**

Cross-validation ensures that there are no conflicts in the use of node names, device classes, and physical paths between the data currently contained in NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS and the system configuration data. To cross-validate, use the SYSGEN facility (OP capability is required). To use SYSGEN, type the following commands at the MPE prompt (user input is bold):

sysgen sysgen> io io> ld (optional) io> exit sysgen> exit

The optional ld (list devices) command allows you to verify the NMMGR devices that are configured.

Cross-validation is done on the KEEP, TAPE, I/O, and RDCC commands in SYSGEN. For more information, see System Startup, Configuration, and Shutdown.

If you have completed the configuration process, proceed to Chapter 14, "Operating the Network."

Validating Network Transport and Cross-Validating with SYSGEN To Cross-Validate in SYSGEN

11

NOTE

# **Configuring the Network Directory**

A network directory is used by the node for internetwork routing. Each entry in a network directory consists of a node name associated with an IP address, the network type, and an additional address, if necessary. The network directory uses the internet protocol (IP) address to transfer data between networks. See Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts," for more information on network directory concepts and for guidelines as to when you need to configure a network directory.

Figure 11-1 shows the screen flow for configuring the network directory screens. Screens unique to the network directory configuration are indicated by bold boxed screens. [FUNCTION] denotes the function key used at a screen to invoke the next screen on the screen flow.

#### Figure 11-1 Network Directory Configuration Screen Flow



This chapter includes step-by-step instructions to help you perform the following tasks:

- Open the network directory file.
- Select the update directory function.
- Add nodes to the network directory file.
- Configure path report data for a node.

If you used the guided configuration facility to configure an X.25 link, you will already have configured the network directory for that link.

## **To Open the Network Directory**

The Open Configuration/Directory file screen (#1) in Figure 11-2 is the first screen displayed when you run NMMGR.

Figure 11-2	Open	Configuration	n/Directory	File
<b>a</b>		<b>-</b>		-

	•							
NMMGR/3000 (V.uu.ff) #1 Open Configuration/Directory File Enter a file or directory name and press the corresponding function key. Command:								
Configuration file name [NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS								
Backup configuration file name [NMCBACK.PUB.SYS								
Network directory file name [NSDIR.NET.SYS								
If a write access password has been assigned, you must enter the password to modify the configuration file.								
Write access password [								
	- : +							
Config Directry Pro	gram							

- **Step 1.** Verify that the correct network directory file name is in the Network directory file name field.
- **Step 2.** If you have assigned a write access password, enter it in this field. If you are not using the password feature, leave this field blank.
- **Step 3.** Press the **[Open Directry]** key. If you are creating the file for the first time, NMMGR will ask you to verify creation. Press the **[Open Directry]** key again to continue.

Fields

Configuration

file nameThe only configuration file name the system recognizes<br/>for use by the network subsystem is<br/>NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS. You can, however, create or<br/>modify a configuration file using a different name and<br/>save it as an offline configuration file. You can use<br/>offline configuration files as a means of creating and<br/>storing configurations that you want to use in the<br/>future or that you are preparing for use on a different<br/>system. When you are ready to use an offline

configuration file, rename it as NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS and reboot the system. (Keep in mind that any file you use as a configuration file must be successfully validated before you try to use it.)

#### Backup

configuration

file name

A backup file name must be specified whenever a configuration file is opened or created. The default backup configuration file name is NMCBACK.group.account. The backup file will be automatically updated with the contents of the configuration file each time the configuration file is successfully validated.

#### Network

directory

file name

The only network directory file name supported by HP is NSDIR.NET.SYS. This file is part of a KSAM pair. A key file is created at the same time as this data file. The key file will automatically be named using the first six letters of the network directory file name, appended with the character K. For example, NSDIRK.NET.SYS is the name of the key file associated with the data file NSDIR.NET.SYS. If the name of the data file is less than six letters long, then the entire file name would be appended with a K.

#### Write access

passwordThe password is an optional feature. If a password has<br/>been assigned, you must enter it in the password field<br/>to update the configuration file or the directory file. It is<br/>still possible to open an existing file without using an<br/>assigned password, but the file will be in read only<br/>mode and no changes will be accepted.

If a password has not been assigned, you should ignore the password field.

If you want to assign a password for the system you are configuring, see *Using the Node Management Services (NMS) Utilities.* 

## **To Select the Update Directory Function**

The Network Directory Main screen (#8) in Figure 11-3 is displayed when you press the **[Open Directry]** function key at the Open Configuration/Directory File screen (#1) in Figure 11-2. This screen is also displayed if a network directory has already been opened and you type **NETDIR** in the command window of any screen and press the **[Enter]** key.

Figure 11-3 Network Directory Main



- **Step 1.** Press the **[Update Dir]** function key to modify the contents of the directory by adding, deleting and updating node names and path reports.
- Function KeysThis screen is the main select screen from which all directory functions<br/>are accessed. The currently opened directory is displayed at the bottom<br/>of all network directory screens. The percentage of the network<br/>directory that is full is shown in the lower right corner of the screen.
  - Update Dir Press this function key to go to the Network Directory Select Node Name screen to add, delete, or modify network directory node name entries and path reports.
  - Print DirPress this function key to print out a copy of the<br/>directory to formal designator FORMLIST, device class<br/>LP. You can use a file equation for FORMLIST to redirect

the output to another device class or disk file. To set a file equation without leaving NMMGR, enter the appropriate MPE command in the command window and press the **[Enter]** key.

Maint Mode Press this function key to enter the command interface to perform directory merging or to expand the size of your directory. See Using the Node Management Services (NMS) Utilities for details on maintenance mode.

Within the maintenance mode interface, command input is read from the formal designator NMMGRCMD, which defaults to \$STDINX. Type EXIT and press the [Enter] key to leave maintenance mode.

## To Add Nodes to the Network Directory File

The Network Directory Select Node Name screen (#9) in Figure 11-4 is displayed when you press the **[Update Dir]** function key at the Network Directory Main screen (#8) in Figure 11-3. The function of this screen is to display node names that are currently configured in the directory, and to allow you to delete, rename, add, or modify information about a node.

Figure 11-4 Network Directory Select Node Name

						•
NMMGR/3000 (V.uu. Enter a Node Name Command:	ff) #9 Network and global/loca	Directory Selec 1 flag and pres	ct Node ss a fur	Name nction key	¥ .	
Node name New name				]	Global? New glo	[Y] ba1 []
L I I I I Directory: NSDIR.	Co Node Names	nfigured Entri	es ] ] ] ] ]	G	1oba1 F1a [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ]	IB
Next Prev Page Page	Delete Rename		Add	Modify	He1p	Prior Screen

- **Step 1.** In the node name field, type in the node name of one of the nodes on your network for which you want network directory information.
- **Step 2.** Set the global/local flag for the entry by setting the value in the Global? field. Leave the default (Y) if you want to allow this entry to be merged into other directories using the MERGEDIR command. Change the setting to "no" (N) if this is a local entry and should not be copied to other configurations.
- **Step 3.** Press the **[Add]** function key. You may add new entries as long as room remains in the file. If the file fills, you may use the Maintenance Mode command **EXPANDDIR** to expand the file. Refer to *Using the Node Management Services (NMS) Utilities* for details on maintenance mode.
- **Step 4.** Repeat steps 1, 2, and 3 for each node name you want to enter in the network directory.

Fields	Node name	The name of the node for which you want network directory information. The node name field must contain a fully qualified node name, in the form nodename.domain.organization, when used to add, modify, delete, or rename a node.
		The node name field when used with the Prev Page and Next Page function keys allows you to browse through a specified part of the network directory. You can enter part of a node name in this field to designate which node names you want displayed. For example, if you enter the value NIK, and press the [Next Page] function key, the list of nodes will begin with the first matching node name, for example NIKOLAI.FINANCE.IND, and continue through the rest of the alphabet until all node names between the letters NIK and Z are listed.
	Global?	The global/local setting for node name. The acceptable values are Y or N. When the Prev Page and Next Page function keys are used, only node names whose global/local setting matches the value in this field are displayed.
		Entries can be configured as either global or local in the network directory. <b>Global</b> entries (the default) can be merged into other directories using the MERGEDIR command. Local entries are not merged into other network directories. The local entries are used for configuring localized network directory entries, thus providing a mechanism to restrict directory data from being propagated throughout the network.
		A situation where this type of restriction could be useful is when you want to change the configuration for users on a single host, but not for everyone else. You can configure two network directory entries: one local, used by host users, and one global, used by everyone else when establishing connections to the host. For example, suppose Node A sets up a new link to Node C, but Node A does not want other nodes (already connected to A) to know about Node C until the new link is tested. Users on Node A can configure a local entry, which contains information about the new link not included in the global entry configured for users on other nodes.
		Other uses of local entries include restricting certain nodes from communicating with the internet, or being able to direct which way to access remote nodes

depending on your configuration of local entries. When both local and global entries exist for the same node, the network transport uses the local entry.

Default value: Y

Range: Y or N

- New name (Required only when renaming an existing node name.) New name to be assigned to the node with the Rename function key.
- New global The global/local flag setting for the node named in the new name field. The acceptable values are Y or N. The only time this field is used is when you rename a node or when you change the global/local setting of a node. The new name field can be left blank if you wish to change only the global/local setting.

Configured

Entries (node

names &

global flag) Display-only fields that show node names and their global/local flag settings that are already configured in the directory.

## To Configure Path Report Data for a Node

The Network Directory Data screen (#10) in Figure 11-5 is displayed when you press the **[Add]** or the **[Modify]** function key at the Select Node Name screen (#9) in Figure 11-4.



									. 🗆
NMMGR/30 When Dat Command	000 (V.uu. ca Flag is	ff) #10 "N", p:	Network ress "Sav	Directory e Data" to	Data create the	director	y entry.	Data	N
]	Node Name:	NODE1.	IXNET.ACC	TG					
Tran	sport serv Y] TCP N] Checks Y] PXP	ices: um for '	TCP requi	red (Y) or	optional (N	i)			
IP	Address ry: NSDIR.	] ] ] ] ] NET.SYS	Type* [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ]	Additional [ [ [ [ [ [ [	Address ] ] ] ] ]	* 1 = I 2 = I 3 = X 4 = N 5 = E 6 = T 7 = F	P EEE802.3( 100VG, 10 .25 ACCES S/SNA THERNET(1 100VG, 10 oken Ring 00VG/IEEE DDI	LAN, 00BT) SS AN, 00BT) 3, 802.5	5
				ļ	_	Save	He1p	Pric	r
L						Data		Scre	en

The function of this screen is to configure path report data for the node name listed at the top of the screen. One path report is configured for each NI on a node. Because the maximum number of NIs per node is eleven (twelve including loopback), each node can contain as many as eleven path reports.

- **NOTE** NS/SNA is no longer offered as a product and has been removed from the Corporate Price List. The product is obsolete with no plans for support.
  - **Step 1.** Verify that the yes and no indicators in the TCP, Checksum for TCP required, and PXP fields are set correctly.
  - **Step 2.** In the IP address field, type in the IP address of the node listed in the Node name field.
  - **Step 3.** In the type field, enter the number that indicates the type of the path:

```
1 = IP
2 = LAN/IEEE 802.3 (LAN, 100VG, 100BT)
3 = X.25 ACCESS
```

- 4 = NS/SNA 5 = ETHERNET (LAN 100VG, 100BT) 6 = Token Ring, 100VG/IEEE 802.5 7 = FDDI
- Step 4. If appropriate for the type of path you are configuring, enter an address in the Additional Address field. (Type 1 requires no additional address. Types 2, 5, and 6 require a station address. Type 3 requires an X.25 address key. Type 4 requires an LU name.) See additional explanation under "Fields."
- Step 5. Press the [Save Data] key.
- **Step 6.** Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 for each path report for the specified node.

If you need to make additional entries in the network directory, press the [**Prior Screen**] key to return to the Network Directory Select Node Name screen. If you have finished making network directory entries, home the cursor and type **EXIT** in the command field, then press [ENTER].

Fields	Transport services	These three field should be config	lds describe the transport services that gured in each path.
		ТСР	TCP must be ${\tt Y}$ (yes) for all nodes. The default is ${\tt Y}.$
		Checksum for	
		ТСР	The checksum setting indicates whether checksumming is optional (N) or required (Y) for TCP. If this field is set to N, then the use of checksums is not requested when communicating with this node. If this field is set to Y then checksums are used when communicating with this node. Checksumming is required for communication to non-HP systems. The default is N.
		PXP	PXP must be Y (yes) for all nodes. The default is Y.
		1	

Note that the selection of transport services here must match the settings in the remote node's configuration file. If the checksum enabled field in the path NETXPORT.GPROT.TCP of this node is set to Y, then TCP checksum field in the network directory should also be set to Y.

IP address One IP address should be entered for each network interface configured on the remote node that is directly reachable from this node. Each address must match an IP address configured in the remote node's configuration file. The path of the screen in the configuration file that contains IP addresses is NETXPORT.NI.NI.NIname.PROTOCOL.IP.

#### Type A number indicating the type of path to configure:

- 1 Select this path type when the NI type is ROUTER (Point-to-Point); or when the NI type is LAN and the destination node supports probe or ARP; or when the NI type is TOKEN or FDD1 and the destination node supports ARP.
- 2 Select this path type when the NI type is LAN, 100VG-AnyLAN or 100Base-T, the destination node does not support probe, and 802.3 framing is used.
- 3 Select this path type when the NI type is X25.
- 4 NS/SNA is no longer offered as a product and has been removed from the Corporate Price List.
  - Select this path type when the NI type is LAN, 100VG-AnyLAN or 100Base-T, the destination node does not support ARP or probe, and Ethernet framing is to be used.
  - Select this path type when the NI type is TOKEN and the destination node does not support ARP.
    - Select this path type when the NI type is FDDI and the destination node does not support ARP.

5

6

7

N1 Type	Framing	Protocols	Туре
Point-to-Point (Router)	N/A	N/A	1
LAN, 100VG-AnyLAN, or	802.3 and Ethernet	Either Probe or ARP	1
100Base-1	802.3 and Ethernet	Neither Probe nor ARP	5
	802.3 only	Not Probe	2
	Ethernet only	Not ARP	5
X.25	N/A	N/A	3
NS/SNA	N/A	N/A	4
Token Ring	N/A	ARP	1
	N/A	Not ARP	6
FDDI	N/A	ARP	1
	N/A	Not ARP	7

Table 11-1Path Type Configuration

Additional

address

A lower-level address, which depends on the type.

Type 1 does not contain lower-level addressing information. You can leave the field blank, or enter the keyword  $\mbox{\tt NONE}.$ 

Types 2, 5, 6, and 7 require the destination node's station address, which is a string of six hexadecimal bytes, separated by dashes (XX-XX-XX-XX-XX). The station address must correspond to the address configured on the remote node.

Type 3 requires an X.25 address key, which is an ASCII string of up to 15 characters. The X.25 address key must correspond to an X.25 address key entered in the NETXPORT.NI.*NIname*.PROTOCOL.X25.SVPATH or the NETXPORT.NI.*NIname*.PROTOCOL.X25.PVCPATH screen for the destination node.

Type 4 requires the destination node's LU name. The LU name is taken from the host generation file of the IBM computer to which this HP 3000 is connected.

# **Configuring Domain Name Files**

If you are planning to use the domain name resolver for name to IP address resolution, you will need to configure a set of ASCII files on each node that contain needed information. To configure these files, you use any standard editor to modify existing sample files according to the instructions in this chapter. See Chapter 2, "Networking Concepts," for more information on domain names.

This chapter details:

- How to modify the RSLVSAMP.NET.SYS file and save it as RESLVCNF.NET.SYS for use as the domain name resolver.
- How to modify the HOSTSAMP.NET.SYS file and save it as HOSTS.NET.SYS for use as the domain name host file.
- Other files you can configure to make additional information available to the network.

## To Create or Modify the Resolver File

The resolver file (RESLVCNF.NET.SYS) is an initialization file for the domain name resolver. It contains information needed by the network to determine how to resolve a domain name to an IP address. This file is read by the resolver routines the first time they are invoked by a process.

To create the resolver file, perform the following steps:

- **Step 1.** Copy the sample file, RSLVSAMP.NET.SYS, to RESLVCNF.NET.SYS.
- **Step 2.** Modify RESLVCNF.NET.SYS using any ASCII editor so that it contains information about the name servers, domain, and search order for your network. The keywords included in the file are described under "Fields."

To modify an already existing RESLVCNF.NET.SYS file, simply use your editor to update and save the existing file.

Fields Each entry in the resolver file consists of a keyword followed by a value separated by white space. The keyword and its associated value must appear on a single line and the keyword must start the line. Figure 12-1 shows an example of a resolver file. Comment lines start with a pound sign (#).

domain Enter the local domain name. Most queries for names within this domain can use short names relative to the local domain name. If the host name does not contain a domain part, the root domain is assumed. If more than one instance of the domain keyword is present, the last instance will override.

> The domain name is composed of labels, with each label separated by a period. Each label must start with a letter or digit, and have as interior characters only letters, digits, hyphens (-), or underbars (\_). A domain name may have any number of labels, but its total length, including periods, is limited to 255 characters.

label[.label][...]

Domain names are not case sensitive.

search The search entry is optional and indicates the order in which domains should be searched for host name lookup. You should add a search entry if users on this system commonly try to connect to nodes in other domains. The search list is limited to six domains with a total of 256 characters. If more than one instance of the search keyword is present, the last instance will override.

Resolver queries will be attempted using each component of the search path in turn until a match is found. Note that this process may be slow and will generate a lot of network traffic if the servers for the listed domains are not local. Note also that queries will time out if no server is available for one of the domains. Enter the IP address of a name server the resolver nameserver should query. The address must be in dot format, with leading zeros omitted and a period between each grouping. See example addresses in Figure 12-1. NOTE It is very important that you omit the leading zeros in the network addresses that you enter in the domain name resolver files. If you enter leading zeros here, the domain name resolver will interpret the numbers as octal numbers. You can list up to three name servers, but you must use a separate keyword entry for each. If there are multiple servers, the resolver will

query them in the order listed. If no nameserver entries are present, the default is to use the HOSTS.NET.SYS file.

If you have no server, do not add any nameserver entries; the resolver will immediately revert to the HOSTS.NET.SYS file.

Errors in the resolver file will be silently ignored by the resolver routines.

#### Figure 12-1 Sample Resolver Configuration File

#resolv.conf file
#
domain loc1.inet.com
search loc1.inet.com inet.com
nameserver 192.255.25.33
nameserver 192.255.354.74
nameserver 192.15.360.75

NOTE

The IP addresses and domain names used in Figure 12-1 are for purposes of the example only.

## **To Create or Modify the Hosts File**

The host name data base file, (HOSTS.NET.SYS), associates internet addresses with official host names and aliases. This allows a user to refer to a host by a symbolic name instead of an internet address.

When you have configured the name server, this file serves only as a backup when the server is not running. In this circumstance, it is a common practice that HOSTS.NET.SYS contains a few addresses of machines on the local network.

To create the hosts file, perform the following steps:

- Step 1. Copy the sample file, HOSTSAMP.NET.SYS, to HOSTS.NET.SYS.
- **Step 2.** Modify HOSTS.NET.SYS using any ASCII editor so that it contains information about the nodes on your network.

To modify an already existing  ${\tt HOSTS.NET.SYS}$  file, simply use your editor to update and save the existing file.

Enter a single line for each host, including the following information:

[internet address] [local host name] [aliases]

A line cannot start with a space. Items are separated by any number of blanks and/or tab characters. A pound sign (#) indicates the beginning of a comment.

Network addresses are specified in dot format, with leading zeros omitted and a period between each grouping. (See example addresses in Figure 12-2.)

Host names can contain any printable character other than a white space, newline, or comment character.

**NOTE** It is very important that you omit the leading zeros in the network addresses. If you enter the leading zeros here, the domain name resolver will interpret the numbers as octal numbers.

```
Figure 12-2Sample Hosts Configuration File
```

```
# This file contains information regarding the known hosts.
#
#
 The for for each entry is:
# host IP address
                                 host aliases
                 local host name
#
# Note: the entries cannot be preceded by a blank space.
#
172.0.0.1
                localhost loopback me myself local
192.41.12.100
                basful.loc1.inet.com
                                               bashful
192.41.11.114
                happy.loc1.inet.com
                                               happy
192.41.11.413
                queezy.loc1.inet.com
                                               queezy
192.41.112.122
                sneezy.loc2.inet.com
                                               sneezy
192.41.124.4
                mpmndda.loc1.inet.com
                                               mpmndda
                                                          moose
192.41.124.6
                mpmndwa.loc1.inet.com
                                               mpmndwa
                                                          wabbit
192.41.114.132
                mpmtchq.loc1.inet.com
                                                          foo
                                               mpmtchq
192.41.110.16
                mpmndiv.loc1.inet.com
                                               mpmndiv
                                                          zephyr
192.41.110.82
                abacus.loc1.inet.com
                                               abacus
                                                          spots
                camelot.loc1.inet.com
                                               camelot
192.41.112.161
192.41.112.166
                bigblue.loc1.inet.com
                                               bigblue
```

NOTE

The IP addresses and host names used in Figure 12-2 are for purposes of the example only.

# Additional Domain Name Configuration Files

In addition to the resolver file and the host name data base, three other files are available to allow you to configure additional information about your network. Each of these files is provided in sample format in the NET.SYS account. Each sample file contains an explanation of the format for the data and a sample entry. The available files and their functions are described as follows.

### **Network Name Database**

The network name database, NETWORKS.NET.SYS, associates IP addresses with official network names and aliases. This allows the user to refer to a network by a symbolic name instead of an internet address. To configure the network name database, modify the sample file NETSAMP.NET.SYS.

## **Protocol Name Database**

The protocol name database <code>PROTOCOL.NET.SYS</code>, associates protocol numbers with official protocol names and aliases. This allows the user to refer to a protocol by a symbolic name instead of a number. The protocol number mappings are defined in *RFC 1010 Assigned Numbers*. To configure the protocol name database, modify the sample file <code>PROTSAMP.NET.SYS</code>.

## Service Name Database

The service name database, SERVICES.NET.SYS, associates official service names and aliases with the port number and protocol the services use. Reserved port numbers 0 through 255 are assigned by RFC 1010. To configure the service name database, modify the sample file SERVSAMP.NET.SYS.

# **Configuring Logging**

This chapter provides step-by-step instructions for configuring logging. Logging is configured for the purpose of recording events such as errors and console commands.

Figure 13-1 shows the screen flow for configuring the logging screens. Screens unique to logging are indicated by bold boxed screens. [FUNCTION] denotes the function key used at a screen to invoke the next screen on the screen flow.



#### Figure 13-1 Logging Configuration Screen Flow

13

This chapter includes step-by-step instructions to help you perform the following tasks:

- Access the logging configuration screens.
- Modify the logging configuration.
- Enable users for individual logging classes.
- Activate logging.

Logging is configured for the purpose of recording events such as errors and console commands. You configure logging for each of the subsystems of NS 3000/iX and for NS 3000/iX links. Each subsystem includes different classes of events (such as internal errors). You can record logging to a disk file for later analysis, to the system console so that the system operator receives the messages, or both.

You can also display logging events at individual users' list devices. This may be valuable to allow the network manager to monitor NS console activity from an alternate terminal. If you configure a logging class so that logging is recorded to a user.account, the user will receive logged messages any time there is an active session for that user.account. (Take care if you enable users for logging; doing so can place a strain on system resources.)

The guided configuration process configures logging for you using defaults. You can also configure or modify the logging subsystem using either guided or unguided configuration.

## **To Access the Logging configuration Screens**

Use the following steps to reach the logging configuration screens:

- **Step 1.** Run NMMGR. The Open Configuration/Directory File screen is displayed.
- **Step 2.** Run NMMGR. The Open Configuration/Directory File screen is displayed.
- Step 3. Press the [NS] function key. The NS Configuration screen is displayed.
- Step 4. Press either the [Guided Config] or the [Unguided Config] function key.
- **Step 5.** Press the [Modify Logging] function key if you are in guided configuration or the [Go To Logging] function key if you are in unguided configuration. The first of six logging configuration screens is displayed.

**NOTE** HP recommends that you use the default logging configuration values unless your HP representative tells you otherwise. Not using the recommended default values may result in the degradation of system performance.

## **To Modify the Logging Configuration**

The Netxport Log Configuration (1) screen (#61) in Figure 13-2 is displayed when you press the **[Modify Logging]** function key at the Network Transport Configuration screen.

Figure 13-2	Netxport Log	Configuration	(1) Screen
- Salo IV W	THE POIL DOS	Soundariation	

						• 🗆	
NMMGR/3000 Fill in th Command:	) (V.uu.ff ne require	) #61 Ne d informa	txport tion; t	Log Configuration (1) hen press the Save Data key.	Data	Y	
<u>Subsystem</u>	Class <u>Name</u>	Console Logging	Disk Logging	<u>Event</u>			
SUB0000	CLAS0000	[Y]	[Y]	Informative messages			
SUB0003 Network Transport	CLAS0001 CLAS0002 CLAS0003 CLAS0004 CLAS0005 CLAS0006	(¥) [Y] [N] [Y] [N]	[Y] [Y] [Y] [Y] [N] [Y]	Serious internal error Internal error/operator attention Non-critical errors Nodal messages (start/stop) Informative messages Statistical information			
To enable	user logg	ing for a	class,	press Save Data and then type			
To see more logging class options, press the Next Screen key.							
Next		E	Exit	Validate Save Help	Pric	)r	
Screen		Log	gging	Netxport Data	Scre	en	

Use the fields and the function keys of the screen to configure logging for the subsystems represented on the screen. If the subsystem for which you want to enable logging does not appear on the first screen, press the **[Next Screen]** function key to go to the next Netxport Log Configuration screen. There are a total of six logging configuration screens.

Enable or disable logging classes (or accept HP-recommended defaults). Press the **[Save Data]** key on each screen to create or modify the data record. Verify that the data record has been created by checking that the Data flag is Y.

Console Logging The value entered in this field specifies whether or not logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside the field will be logged to the system console. A value must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A Y (yes) enables logging to the console, N (no) disables logging to the console.

Fields

Disk Logging The value entered in this field specifies whether or not logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside the field will be logged to a disk file. A value must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A Y (yes) enables logging to a file, N (no) disables logging to a file. The file name for the log file is NMLGnnnn . PUB . SYS, where nnnn is a number from 0000 to 9999. All logging classes in all subsystems are logged to this file. At each system startup, or when a file is full, the node management services subsystem (NMS) creates a new NMLGnnnn . PUB . SYS file, naming each successive logging file by incrementing nnnn. When NMLG9999 . PUB . SYS is full, NMS names the next logging file NMLG0000 . PUB . SYS.

The Netxport Log Configuration (2) screen (#60) in Figure 13-3 is displayed when you press the **[Next Screen]** function key from the Netxport Log Configuration (1) screen (#61) in Figure 13-2.

Figure 13-3	Netxport	Log Cor	figuration	(2) Screen
I Igui C 10 0	пстрогс	LUS CUI	inguiation	

							•	
NMMGR/3000 Fill in th Command:	MMGR/3000 (V.uu.ff) #60 Netxport Log Configuration (2) Data: Y ill in the required information; then press the Save Data key. ommand:							
<u>Subsystem</u>	Class <u>Name</u>	Console Disk <u>Logging Loggi</u>	.ng <u>Event</u>					
SUB0004 DC/LDM	CLAS0000	[Y] [Y]	Notable e	vents				
SUB0005 Network IPC	CLAS0000 CLAS0001 CLAS0002	[Y] [Y] [N] [Y] [N] [N]	Internal Resource Informati	errors errors ve messag	es			
SUB0006 Network Services	CLAS0002 CLAS0003 CLAS0004 CLAS0005	[N] [Y] [N] [Y] [N] [Y] [N] [Y]	Resource Internal Detailed NetIPC in	errors errors events (e ternal er	nable wi rors	th NSCONT	ROL LOG)	
To enable user logging for a class, press Save Data and then type "@LOGGING.SUB00xx.CLAS00xx" on the command line and presss ENTER.								
To see mor <u>File:</u> NMC	e logging ONFIG.PUB	class options .SYS	, press the N	ext Scree	n key.			
Next Screen		Exit Logging		Validate Netxport	Save Data	He1p	Prior Screen	

Use the fields and the function keys of the screen to configure logging for the subsystems represented on the screen. If the subsystem for which you want to enable logging does not appear on this screen, press the **[Next Screen]** function key to go to the next Netxport Log Configuration screen. There are a total of six logging configuration screens.

**Configuring Logging** To Modify the Logging Configuration Enable or disable logging classes (or accept HP-recommended defaults). Press the [Save Data] key on each screen to create or modify the data record. Verify that the data record has been created by checking that the Data flag is Y. Fields Console The value entered in this field specifies whether or not Logging logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside the field will be logged to the system console. A value must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A Y (yes) enables logging to the console, N (no) disables logging to the console. Disk Logging The value entered in this field specifies whether or not logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside the field will be logged to a disk file. A value must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A Y (yes) enables logging to a file, N (no) disables logging to a file. The file name that NMS uses is NMLGnnnn.PUB.SYS, where *nnnn* is a number from 0000 to 9999. All logging classes in all subsystems are logged to this file. At each system startup, or when a file is full, NMS creates a new NMLGnnnn. PUB. SYS file, naming each successive logging file by incrementing *nnn*. When NMLG9999. PUB. SYS is full, NMS names the next logging file NMLG0000. PUB. SYS.

The Netxport Log Configuration (3) screen (#70) in Figure 13-4 is displayed when you press the **[Next Screen]** function key from the Netxport Log Configuration (2) screen (#60) in Figure 13-3.

				•					
NMMGR/3000 Fill in th Command:	(V.uu.ff e require	) #70 Netxport d information;	Log Configuration (3) then press the Save Data key.	Data: Y					
<u>Subsystem</u>	Class <u>Name</u>	Console Disk Logging Loggin	ng <u>Event</u>						
SUB0008 Link Mgr	CLAS0000	[N] [Y]	Internal errors						
SUB0018 Trace Mgr	CLAS0000	[N] [N]	Errors						
SUB0024 NMMGR	CLAS0001	[N] [N]	Informational messages						
To enable user logging for a class, press Save Data and then type "@LOGGING.SUB00xx.CLAS00xx" on the command line and press ENTER. To see more logging class options, press the Next Screen key. <u>File:</u> NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS									
Next Screen		Exit Logging	Validate Save H Netxport Data	elp Prior Screen					

#### Figure 13-4 Netxport Log Configuration (3) Screen

Use the fields and the function keys of the screen to configure logging for the subsystems represented on the screen. If the subsystem for which you want to enable logging does not appear on this screen, press the **[Next Screen]** function key to go to the next Netxport Log Configuration screen. There are a total of six logging configuration screens.

Enable or disable logging classes (or accept HP-recommended defaults). Press the **[Save Data]** key on each screen to create or modify the data record. Verify that the data record has been created by checking that the Data flag is Y.

Fields	Console
	Logging The value entered in this field specifies whether or not logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside the field will be logged to the system console. A value must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A Y (yes) enables logging to the console, N (no) disables logging to the console.
	Disk Logging The value entered in this field specifies whether or not logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside the field will be logged to a disk file. A value must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A Y (yes) enables logging to a file, N (no) disables logging to a file. The file name that NMS uses is NMLGnnnn . PUB . SYS, where nnnn is a number from 0000 to 9999. All logging classes in all subsystems are logged to this file. At each

system startup, or when a file is full, NMS creates a new NMLGnnnn . PUB . SYS file, naming each successive logging file by incrementing *nnnn*. When NMLG9999 . PUB . SYS is full, NMS names the next logging file NMLG0000 . PUB . SYS.

The Netxport Log Configuration (4) screen (#68) in Figure 13-5 is displayed when you press the **[Next Screen]** function key from the Netxport Log Configuration (3) screen (#70) in Figure 13-4.

Figure 13-5 Netxport Log Configuration (4) Screen

-						•			
NMMGR/3000 Fill in the Command:	(V.uu.ff e require	) #68 Netxport I d information; th	og Configuration (4) Nen press the Save Da	ta key.		Data: Y			
<u>Subsystem</u>	Class <u>Name</u>	Console Disk <u>Logging Logging</u>	<u>Event</u>						
SUB0025 LAN driver	CLAS0001 CLAS0002 CLAS0003	[N] [Y] [N] [Y] [N] [Y]	Errors Warnings Informational messa	es					
SUB0028 Lap B Link	CLAS0010 CLAS0012	[N] [Y] [N] [Y]	Errors Informational messa	iges					
SUB0040 Remote Link Mgr	CLAS0001 CLAS0002 CLAS0003 CLAS0004 CLAS0005	[N] [Y] [N] [Y] [N] [Y] [N] [Y] [N] [Y]	Catastrophic errors Serious errors Notable errors Nodal messages (sta Informative message	rt/stop)	)				
To enable user logging for a class, press Save Data and then type "@LOCGING.SUB00xx.CLAS00xx" on the command line and press ENTER. To see more logging class options, press the Next Screen key. <u>File:</u> NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS									
Next Screen		Exit Logging	Validate Netxport	Save Data	He1p	Prior Screen			

Use the fields and the function keys of the screen to configure logging for the subsystems represented on the screen. If the subsystem for which you want to enable logging does not appear on this screen, press the [Next Screen] function key to go to the next Netxport Log Configuration screen. There are a total of six logging configuration screens.

Enable or disable logging classes (or accept HP-recommended defaults). Press the **[Save Data]** key on each screen to create or modify the data record. Verify that the data record has been created by checking that the Data flag is Y.

Press the **[Exit Logging]** function key when you have finished modifying the logging configuration.
FieldsConsoleLoggingThe value entered in this field specifies whether or not<br/>logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside<br/>the field will be logged to the system console. A value<br/>must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A<br/>Y (yes) enables logging to the console, N (no) disables<br/>logging to the console.Disk LoggingThe value entered in this field specifies whether or not<br/>logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside<br/>the field will be logged to a disk file. A value must be

the field will be logged to a disk file. A value must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A Y (yes) enables logging to a file, N (no) disables logging to a file. The file name that NMS uses is NMLG*nnnn*. PUB.SYS, where *nnnn* is a number from 0000 to 9999. All logging classes in all subsystems are logged to this file. At each system startup, or when a file is full, NMS creates a new NMLG*nnnn*. PUB.SYS file, naming each successive logging file by incrementing *nnnn*. When NMLG9999.PUB.SYS is full, NMS names the next logging file NMLG0000.PUB.SYS.

The Netxport Log Configuration (5) screen (#69) in Figure 13-6 is displayed when you press the **[Next Screen]** function key from the Netxport Log Configuration (4) screen (#68) in Figure 13-5.

#### Figure 13-6 Netxport Log Configuration (5) Screen

-					
NMMGR/3000 Fill in the Command:	(V.uu.f: e require	f) #69 1 ed inform	Netxport mation; t	Log Configuration (5) hen press the Save Data key.	Data: Y
<u>Subsystem</u>	Class <u>Name</u>	Consol Loggin	e Disk g <u>Logging</u>	Event	
SUB0057 SNMP	CLAS000 CLAS000 CLAS000 CLAS000	1 [Y] 2 [N] 3 [N] 4 [N]	[Y] [Y] [N] [N]	Fatal errors Serious errors Warnings Informational messages	
SUB0061 Token Ring Link	CLAS000 CLAS000 CLAS000	1 [N] 2 [N] 3 [N]	[Y] [Y] [Y]	Errors Warnings Informational messages	
SUB0067 FDDI Lan	CLAS000	1 <b>[N]</b>	[Y]	Errors	
To enable user logging for a class, press Save Data and then type "@LOGGING.SUB00xx.CLAS00xx" on the command line and press ENTER. File: NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS					
Next Screen		T	Exit	Validate Save Hel	p Prior Screen

	Configuring Logging To Modify the Logging Configuration			
	Use the fields and the function keys of the screen to configure logging for the subsystems represented on the screen. If the subsystem for which you want to enable logging does not appear on this screen, press the <b>[Next Screen]</b> function key to go to the next Netxport Log Configuration screen. There are a total of six logging configuration screens.			
	Enable or disable logging classes (or accept HP-recommended defaults). Press the <b>[Save Data]</b> key on each screen to create or modify the data record. Verify that the data record has been created by checking that the Data flag is Y.			
	Press the <b>[Exit Logging]</b> function key when you have finished modifying the logging configuration.			
Fields	Console Logging The value entered in this field specifies whether or not logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside the field will be logged to the system console. A value must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A Y (yes) enables logging to the console, N (no) disables logging to the console.			
	Disk Logging The value entered in this field specifies whether or not logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside the field will be logged to a disk file. A value must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A Y (yes) enables logging to a file, N (no) disables logging to a file. The file name that NMS uses is NMLGnnnn. PUB.SYS, where nnnn is a number from 0000 to 9999. All logging classes in all subsystems are logged to this file. At each system startup, or when a file is full, NMS creates a new NMLGnnnn.PUB.SYS file, naming each successive logging file by incrementing nnnn. When NMLG9999.PUB.SYS is full, NMS names the next logging file NMLG0000.PUB.SYS.			
	The Netxport Log Configuration (6) screen (#316) in Figure 13-7 is displayed when you press the <b>[Next Screen]</b> function key from the Netxport Log Configuration (5) screen (#69) in Figure 13-6.			

							• □
NMMGR/3000 Fill in the Command:	(B.06.00 e require	) #316 Netxport I d information; th	.og Configuration (6 nen press the Save D	) ata key.		Data:	Υ
<u>Subsystem</u>	Class Name	Console Disk Logging Logging	Event				
SUB0074 100VG802.3 driver	CLAS0001 CLAS0002 CLAS0003	[Y] [Y] [N] [Y] [N] [Y]	Errors Warnings Informational mess	ages			
SUB0077 100BaseT driver	CLAS0001 CLAS0002 CLAS0003	[Y] [Y] [N] [Y] [N] [Y]	Errors Warnings Informational mess	ages			
To enable user logging for a class, press Save Data and then type "@LOGGING.SUB00xx.CLAS00xx" on the command line and press ENTER.							
To see more logging class options, press the Next Screen key. <u>File:</u> NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS							
Next Screen		Exit Logging	Validate Netxport	Save Data	He1p	Prior Scree	n

Figure 13-7 Netxport Log Configuration (6) Screen

Use the fields and the function keys of the screen to configure logging for the subsystems represented on the screen. If the subsystem for which you want to enable logging does not appear on this screen, press the **[Next Screen]** function key to go to the next Netxport Log Configuration screen. There are a total of six logging configuration screens.

Fields Enable or disable logging classes (or accept HP-recommended defaults). Press the [Save Data] key on each screen to create or modify the data record. Verify that the data record has been created by checking that the Data flag is Y.

Console

- Logging The value entered in this field specifies whether or not logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside the field will be logged to the system console. A value must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A Y (yes) enables logging to the console, N (no) disables logging to the console.
- Disk Logging The value entered in this field specifies whether or not logging events for the subsystem and class listed beside the field will be logged to a disk file. A value must be entered for each subsystem and class listed. A Y (yes) enables logging to a file, N (no) disables logging to a file. The file name that NMS uses is NMLGnnnn . PUB . SYS, where nnnn is a number from 0000 to 9999. All logging classes in all subsystems are logged to this file. At each

system startup, or when a file is full, NMS creates a new NMLGnnnn. PUB.SYS file, naming each successive logging file by incrementing *nnnn*. When NMLG9999.PUB.SYS is full, NMS names the next logging file NMLG0000.PUB.SYS.

# **To Enable Users for Individual Logging Classes**

The logging screens described previously in this chapter make it possible to completely configure logging for all subsystems by traversing only six screens. However, using these screens, it is not possible to configure logging so that messages generated by specific logging classes are sent to an individual user's list device.

The following steps describe the method used to configure users to receive logging messages. Using this method, you can create a configuration that allows messages from a single logging class, or a set of classes, to be sent to a user's list device.

To do so, you access and update the Logging Configuration Class Data screen (#67) in Figure 13-7, according to the steps that follow.

Figure 13-8 Logging Configuration: Class Data Screen

	•			
NMMGR/3000 (V.uu.ff) #67 Logging Configuration: Class Data When Data Flag is "N", press "Save Data" to create the data record. Command:	Data: Y			
Path: LOGGING.SUB0000.CLAS0000				
<ul> <li>Y Enable Console Logging? (Y/N)</li> <li>Y Enable Disc Logging? (Y/N)</li> </ul>				
[1] Current number of users enabled for logging				
Users enabled for logging (User.Account):				
[USER1.ACCTG] [ ] [ ]				
File: NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS				
Save Help Data	Prior Screen			

#### **Step 1.** Type the path name:

LOGGING.SUBnnnn.CLASnnnn

in the command window of any screen and press the [ENTER] key, where SUB*nnnn* is the subsystem ID and CLAS*nnnn* is the class name of the logging class you want directed to the user's list device.

Configuring Logging To Enable Users for Individual Logging Classes

- Step 2. To enable console logging for this subsystem logging class, enter a Y in the Enable console logging? field. To disable console logging, enter an N. Be aware that changing the value in this field will override the previous setting for the logging class you are configuring.
- Step 3. To enable disk logging for this subsystem logging class, enter a Y in the Enable disk logging? field. To disable console logging, enter an N. Be aware that changing the value in this field will override the previous setting for the logging class you are configuring.
- **Step 4.** Enter up to three names, in the form user.account, in the Users enabled for logging fields. If these fields already contain names it is because user names were previously configured using this screen. If less than three user names are configured, type the new user name in an empty field. If all fields are used, type over one of the old user names to replace it with the new user name. (Note that the user name you type over will no longer be enabled to receive these logging messages.)
- Step 5. Press the [Save Data] function key to modify the data record.
- **Step 6.** Press the [**Prior Screen**] key to return to the screen from which you accessed the Logging Configuration: Class Data screen.

Repeat the above procedure for each subsystem logging class for which you want to enable users.

CAUTION Enabling users to receive logging messages can strain system resources. Hewlett-Packard recommends that you use this capability sparingly and only for short periods of time.

## **To Activate Logging**

NetIPC logging is automatically activated at system start up. Network Services logging is activated when the Network Services are initiated (that is, when the NSCONTROL START command is issued). Link manager logging and network transport logging are activated when you initiate the network transport (NETCONTROL START).

When you are changing a logging configuration for a specific subsystem, the changes will normally take effect when you perform a **SWITCHNMLOG UPDATE** command. In some cases, however, such as when no logging is currently active, the subsystem may need to be deactivated and restarted. The steps that must be taken for each subsystem are shown in Table 13-1.

Subsystem	Steps
Network Transport	NETCONTROL STOP (if already active) NETCONTROL START
NetIPC (sockets)	Restart the system (warmstart, coolstart, update start, or coldstart)
Network Services	NSCONTROL STOP (if already active) NSCONTROL START
Link Manager	NETCONTROL STOP (if already active) SNACONTROL STOP; node=nodename (repeat to the SNA Link/XL Node Manger's Guide SNACONTROL START; NODE=nodename NETCONTROL START

Table 13-1Subsystem Activation/Deactivation

How to use the log messages for troubleshooting is described in the *NS 3000/iX Error Messages Reference Manual*. How to format the log file for examination is described in *Using the Node Management Services (NMS) Utilities*.

Configuring Logging
To Activate Logging

## **Operating the Network**

After you have completed the configuration process, you are ready to activate NS. This chapter shows you how to bring up an NS 3000/iX node and how to shut it down. It assumes you have successfully completed the configuration steps described previously.

For more detailed information on starting, stopping, and operating an NS network, see the *NS 3000/iX Operations and Maintenance Reference Manual.* 

This chapter includes step-by-step instructions to help you perform the following tasks:

- Start links and services.
  - Start software loopback (optional).
  - Start the links.

14

- Start Network Services.
- Test Network Services.
- Shut down links and services.

## **To Start Links and Services**

## **To Start Software Loopback**

Issue the following command (NM capability required) to start software loopback:

#### NETCONTROL START;NET=loopbackNIname

This starts up the control process, the transport, and software loopback. Note: when you use guided NMMGR to create any NI, a loopback network interface (whose loopbackNIname is LOOP) is automatically generated. The loopback NI must be started if you wish to perform local loopbacks or to DSLINE to the local node.

## To Start a Link

Issue the following command (NM capability required) to start a link:

```
NETCONTROL START;NET=NIname
```

This starts the link identified by the NI name. (If no previous **NETCONTROL START** command was issued, then the control process and transport are also started.) The **NIname** is the network interface (NI) name that you supplied during NS configuration. You can start the link before loopback if you want. Start other links as needed.

#### To Start a Host-Based X.25 Link

If your network includes X.25 links and you are using host-based network management, you will need to use the DTCCNTRL command *before* you issue the NETCONTROL START command. DTCCNTRL starts X.25 and PAD support for the DTC/X.25 Network Access card. Issue the following command (System Operator capability required):

DTCCNTRL DTC=dtcname;CARD=cardnumber;FUNC=function

where function is one of the following:

**STARTX25** to start X.25 services;

**STARTPADSUP** to start PAD support services;

**STARTBOTH** to start both X.25 and PAD support services.

For more information on starting host-based X.25 links as well as other uses of the DTCCNTRL command, see *Configuring and Managing Host-Based X.25 Links*.

**NOTE** If you are starting an X.25 link for a system using PC-based network management or if you are not starting an X.25 link, you do not need to use the DTCCNTRL command.

### **To Start the Network Services**

Issue the following command (NM capability required) to start the network services:

NSCONTROL START

This starts the NS 3000/iX Network Services, such as Virtual Terminal, Network File Transfer, Remote File Access, and Remote Data Base Access.

You may want to create a startup UDC or command file to activate software loopback, the link(s), and the network services.

## **To Test the Network Services**

In order to test that you have successfully configured and brought up your NS node, HP provides an NS validation test called QVALNS.NET.SYS.QVALNS is a program which modifies a file called TQVALNS and streams it as a temporary job (JQVALNS). The job purges and creates various files, and then runs a program called NSTEST. NSTEST tests the network services (VT, RFA, RDBA, and NFT).

To run the NS validation test, follow the step below:

**Step 1.** Run the NS validation test on your own node. This tests the software loopback capability. Issue the following command, where node is the node portion of your own node name:

RUN QVALNS.NET.SYS; INFO=node

**Step 2.** Run the NS validation test on another system on the same network. Select a remote node on the network and make sure that the link and the network services are up on the remote system by issuing the following commands on that node (NM capability required):

NETCONTROL STATUS

NSCONTROL STATUS

If the link or network services have not been started, either pick another node or start them.

Note the node name of the remote node (given in the last line of output from the **NETCONTROL STATUS** command). If you followed the configuration steps in this manual, the second and third portions of the node name (the domain and organization) should be the same as the second and third portions of the local node.

**Step 3.** Run the NS validation test across the link by issuing the following command at the local node, where node is the node portion of the remote node name:

RUN QVALNS.NET.SYS; INFO=node

If you encounter problems, see the *NS 3000/iX Operations and Maintenance Reference Manual* and to the *NS 3000/iX Error Messages Reference Manual* for information on diagnostics and troubleshooting.

## **To Shut Down the Network Services**

To shut down NS, issue the following commands (NM capability required):

DSLINE @;CLOSE

NSCONTROL STOP

NETCONTROL STOP

The DSLINE command shown above closes connections for your session only.

NSCONTROL STOP allows existing users to continue using the services until they finish their current task but prevents new uses of the services by these users or by new users. Therefore, the services are not actually stopped until all existing users finish using them. You can use NSCONTROL ABORT instead if you wish to immediately terminate all use of the services.

**NETCONTROL STOP** closes all open connections. To determine if there are any sessions still active, enter: **NSCONTROL STATUS**. If you do not want to wait until existing users are finished with their current tasks before you bring down the system, issue **NSCONTROL ABORT** and then **NETCONTROL STOP**.

If a host-based X.25 link is started, you will also need to issue a DTCCNTRL command to stop X.25 and PAD support for the DTC/X.25 Network Access card. Enter the DTCCNTRL command after the NSCONTROL STOP and NETCONTROL STOP commands. Enter the command as:

DTCCNTRL DTC=dtcname;CARD=cardnumber;FUNC=function

where function is one of the following:

**STARTX25** to start X.25 services;

**STARTPADSUP** to start PAD support services;

**STARTBOTH** to start both X.25 and PAD support services.

Operating the Network
To Shut Down the Network Services

## **MPE/V to MPE/iX Migration**

This appendix provides a quick overview of the planning and tasks you will need to do to migrate an NS 3000 network from an MPE/V system to an MPE/iX system. This appendix assumes that you are migrating your network as a whole; that is, replacing all MPE V systems with MPE/iX systems and maintaining the same basic network function.

The following topics are covered by this appendix:

- Differences between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX networks.
- An overview of migration tasks.
- Guidelines for converting files.
- Guidelines for reconfiguring a network.

**NOTE** For information on migrating X.25 links, refer to the remaining appendixes of this manual.

# Differences Between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX

There are a number of differences between the way NS is implemented on MPE V systems and the way it is implemented on MPE/iX systems. These differences affect the network itself, some of the applications that users may run over the network, and the command used to obtain status information about the network. Since it is helpful to understand these differences as you prepare to move an existing MPE V network to MPE/iX, they are summarized below.

## **Differences in the Network**

A number of the methods available for making connections to an MPE V network are not available with NS 3000/iX. If your MPE V network includes one of these you will need to modify your network configuration before attempting to use the network on MPE/iX systems. More information on the specific steps required to modify or remove unsupported links or connections can be found later in this appendix.

The connection methods that are not supported on NS 3000/iX are:

- Manual dial modems.
- Asynchronous Network Link.
- Bisynchronous link-level protocol.

In addition, while it is possible to access a DS/3000 node directly from an NS 3000/V node, this capability is not supported on NS 3000/iX. A user of an NS 3000/iX network who wants to access a DS/3000 node must first access an MPE V NS node. This is because the DS/3000 code that was included as a subset of the NS 3000/V code is not provided with NS 3000/iX.

### **Differences in Configuration Files**

NS 3000/V network configuration files are separated into two files, the NMCONFIG file, which contains link information, and the NSCONF file, which contains the transport configuration and other subsystems you have purchased such as SNA.

NS 3000/iX systems have a single NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS file that contains information for the network transport, for NetIPC and link-level logging, and also for the Datacommunications and Terminal Subsystem (DTS). NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS also contains information for any other subsystems you have purchased such as SNA.

## **Differences in Applications Support**

There are also differences in the implementations of NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX that will affect certain applications that users may currently be running on your MPE V network. These differences are as follows:

• NS 3000/iX supports PTOP for HPDESK only.

On NS 3000/iX PTOP is not supported for applications other than HPDESK. Network users who are running PTOP programs will need to convert them to NetIPC/RPM programs before running them on an NS 3000/iX network. Refer to the *NetIPC 3000/XL Programmer's Reference Manual* and the *Using NS 3000/iX Network Services* for more information.

• Nowait I/O RFA is not available with NS 3000/iX.

Privileged mode programs that use nowait I/O Remote File Access over an MPE V network will need to be modified before they can be run on an NS 3000/iX network. Refer to the *Using NS 3000/iX Network Services* for more information.

## **Difference in How to Obtain Status Information**

On MPE V systems the **SHOWCOM** command returns status information about a communication device, and is used to determine line activity and quality. This information is still available on NS 3000/iX, but is accessed through a different command. Use the **LINKCONTROL STATUS** command to access status information on NS 3000/iX.

## **Migration Overview**

There are a number of steps that you must take to successfully convert an MPE V network for use as an MPE/iX network. These tasks are summarized below, and described in more detail in the remainder of this appendix. Keep in mind that, depending on the needs of your installation, you may need to perform additional tasks to complete your migration. For example, if you are adding communication links that did not exist on your MPE V network you will also need to configure those new links.

## **Before You Start**

This guide provides an extensive overview of NS architecture and networking concepts. It also furnishes configuration design checks, planning worksheets and examples to aid you in organizing new network configurations. You should be thoroughly familiar with this material before you begin your migration.

## **File Migration Tasks**

There are two primary tasks you will need to perform to migrate your network configuration files. These are:

- 1. Run the NMMGRVER utility on the old configuration files to convert them to the current software version. (You will first need to install a copy of all configuration files used for your NS 3000/V network to the MPE/iX network). Refer to "File Conversion Guidelines" later in this Appendix.
- 2. Run the NMMGR utility on the new configuration file(s) to make any changes required due to the differences between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX. Refer to "Reconfiguration Guidelines" later in this Appendix.

## **Additional Migration Considerations**

This appendix does not discuss hardware migration considerations; however, you will find a description of hardware components in this manual. Additionally, details of hardware installation and configuration can be found in the following manuals:

- LANIC Installation and Service Manual.
- LAN Cable and Accessories Installation Manual.
  - Central Bus Programmable Serial Interface Installation and Reference Manual.

## **File Conversion Guidelines**

A file conversion utility called NMMGRVER.PUB.SYS allows you to convert earlier versions of subsystems for use with the current version of Node Management Services (NMS) by converting the files to an acceptable format.

## When you Need to Convert Files

If you have not successfully converted your files you will be notified that conversion is necessary when you try either to run NMMGR or to perform a **NETCONTROL** command. If you attempt to run NMMGR against an unconverted configuration file you will receive the message:

Version mismatch found on specified subsystem. Please run NMMGRVER. (NMGRERR 53)

If you attempt to perform **NETCONTROL** while using unconverted files you will receive the following message at the console:

Bad CONFIG File Version

In either case you should stop your current activity and run the NMMGRVER.PUB.SYS file conversion utility on your configuration files.

WARNINGThe conversion procedure that follows will not preserve any<br/>previously configured Distributed Terminal Subsystem (DTS)<br/>configuration values. If you are updating from an earlier<br/>version of MPE/iX at the same time you are migrating from<br/>NS 3000/V to NS 3000/iX, you should see the information under<br/>"To Update From a Previous MPE/iX Version" later in this<br/>Appendix before converting your configuration files.

#### **To Convert Files**

You should follow these steps to convert your configuration files using NMMGRVER:

- Step 1. Make a backup copy of the existing configuration files.
- **Step 2.** Install a copy of the MPE/V NMCONFIG file to NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS on the MPE/iX system, and then install copies of any NSCONF files.
- Step 3. Execute NMMGRVER.PUB.SYS by entering:

RUN NMMGRVER.PUB.SYS

The system responds with the following banner:

NMS Configuration File Conversion Utility 32099-11018 V.uu.ff (C) Hewlett-Packard Co. 1985 MPE/V to MPE/iX Migration File Conversion Guidelines

**Step 4.** The system will then prompt for the name of the configuration file to be converted by displaying the message:

Fileset to be scanned?

You can then choose to end the conversion program by pressing the **[RETURN]** key, or you can enter one of the following filesets:

```
filename [.groupname [.acctname]]
@ [.groupname [.acctname]]
@.@ [.acctname]
@.@.@
```

NMMGRVER searches for files of type nconf in the specified fileset. For each file found, it asks:

OK to convert filename.groupname.acctname?

where filename.groupname.acctname is the name of a configuration file. Enter Y for yes, or enter either N or [RETURN] for no.

**Step 5.** NMMGRVER checks the configuration file to determine whether it is an MPE/V or an MPE/iX configuration file. If it is an MPE/iX file the conversion proceeds without further user input. If the file is an MPE/V file, however, NMMGRVER prompts you for the type of MPE/V file you are converting, as follows:

What is the type of this file?
1) MPE V NSCONF
2) MPE V NMCONFIG
3) skip this file
Enter a value between 1 and 3.

Enter the appropriate value.

**Step 6.** After each file is converted NMMGRVER will display the following message:

FILE CONVERTED

Continue to enter either  ${\tt Y}, {\tt N},$  or [RETURN] until you have converted all files.

In the conversion process, NMMGRVER will merge the information from each NSCONF file accepted for conversion with NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS, and create new (converted) NSCONF files. If you have converted more than one NSCONF file, you will need to choose the file that corresponds to the network configuration you want, and

rename it as the new <code>NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS</code>. Choose the <code>NSCONF</code> file that corresponds to the network configuration you want to use as your NS 3000/iX configuration.

This new NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS file contains your NS configuration in a format acceptable to MPE/iX. You can now run NMMGR to configure the DTS subsystem, and to perform any needed modifications to the NS configuration. See "Reconfiguration Guidelines" later in this appendix.

## To Update From a Previous MPE/iX Version

If you are updating from an earlier version of MPE/iX at the same time you are migrating from NS 3000/V to NS 3000/iX, you will need to make a choice between reconfiguring your Distributed Terminal Subsystem (DTS) and reconfiguring your NS network. The choice is necessary because MPE/V versions of NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS files do not include DTS configuration values.

You should let the circumstances of your installation determine which configuration values you preserve. If your NS network is complex, you may decide to convert the existing MPE/V configuration files, and reconfigure DTS. In this case you should follow the steps under "File Conversion Guidelines" earlier in this appendix.

If, on the other hand, your DTS configuration is extensive, you may decide to migrate your existing MPE/iX configuration files to the new version of MPE/iX. You will then need to redo your NS network configuration so that both the NS and DTS configurations are contained in a single, valid, MPE/iX NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS file. In any case, you will need to reconfigure either NS or DTS if you are both updating MPE/iX and converting from an NS 3000/V network to an NS 3000/iX network.

## **Reconfiguration Guidelines**

Once your MPE/V NS configuration files have been converted for use with the MPE/iX version of NS you will need to reconfigure your network to account for the implementation differences between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX. Run the NMMGR utility against the configuration file generated by the file conversion process and perform the following reconfiguration tasks:

- Configure the physical path of all links for your network. This configuration consists of a channel number (ccc) and subchannel number (sss) in the form ccc.sss. There is no channel or subchannel associated with NS on MPE V.
- Since the LAP-B protocol is the only point-to-point link-level protocol supported on the MPE/iX computer, you must reconfigure links that were configured as bisynchronous links on NS 3000/V as LAP-B links, or remove them from the network configuration.
- Configure the Distributed Terminal Subsystem (DTS) according to the needs of your installation. Refer to *Configuring Systems for Terminals, Printers, and Other Serial Devices* for instructions on how to configure the DTS.

The above configuration tasks are a general summary of what you will need to do to reconfigure your network to run on MPE/iX. You should be aware that there are many changes to individual screens and screen fields. Refer to this guide for information on individual screens and screen fields.

## NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/XL Releases 1.0, 1.1, or 1.2 to

## NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later

This Appendix tells how to use the NMMGRVER utility to migrate (update) a node's configuration file from NS 3000/XL releases 1.0, 1.1, or 1.2 to NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later. This Appendix does not apply if any MPE V based node is being used as an X.25 server for NS 3000/XL based machines. Refer to the following appendixes depending on which X.25 network products you currently have:

- For migrating a configuration file from a node running NS X.25 3000/V Link to a node that will be running NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later, refer to Appendix C, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later," this appendix does not apply if an MPE V based node is being used as an X.25 server for NS 3000/XL based machines.
- For migrating a configuration file from any MPE V based node acting as an X.25 server for NS 3000/XL based machines (including the NS X.25 3000/XL Server product) to an NS 3000/iX node that will be running NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later, refer to Appendix D, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V and NS 3000/XL Release 1.X to iX Release 2.0 or later."
- For migrating a configuration file from a node running NS 3000/V PAD to an NS 3000/iX node that will be running NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later, refer to Appendix E, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V PAD Access to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later."

B

## To Convert NS 3000/XL 1.X to 2.0 Files

The following procedure describes the steps necessary for conversion.

**Step 1.** At the MPE/iX prompt, type:

Run NMMGRVER.PUB.SYS

**Step 2.** At the prompt, enter the filenames to convert:

Fileset to be scanned?

For example, enter NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS, then press [RETURN]. You can enter one file name or a set of files in the following form:

filename [.groupname [.acctname]]

@ [.groupname [.acctname]]

@.@ [.acctname]

@.@.@

**Step 3.** NMMGRVER creates a backup of the file and displays the following message:

OK to convert filename.groupname.acctname?\_

The backup files are named NMBACKA, NMBACKB, and so on. To proceed, enter **Y** for Yes, then press [RETURN]. Press [RETURN] or type N, [RETURN] to exit.

Step 4. NMMGRVER displays the following message:

Backup file is NMBACKY, temporary file is Nnnnn.

**Step 5.** The file conversion proceeds without further input. When complete, the message:

CONVERSION COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY

is displayed.

#### Step 6.

Rename the converted file if required. Make any updates to the DTS subystem using NMMGR as required for your installation to complete the conversion. For full details, refer to *Configuring Systems for Terminals, Printers, and Other Serial Devices* if your system uses PC-based network management, or to *Configuring and Managing Host-Based X.25 Links* if your system uses host-based network management.

## NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later

This Appendix tells how to use the NMMGRVER utility to migrate (update) configuration files from a node running NS X.25 3000/V Link to a node that will be running NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later. This appendix does *not* apply if an MPE V based node is being used as an X.25 server for NS 3000/XL based machines. Refer to the following appendixes depending on which X.25 network products you currently have:

- For migrating a node's configuration file from NS 3000/XL releases 1.0, 1.1, or 1.2 to NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later, refer to Appendix B, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/XL Releases 1.0, 1.1, or 1.2 to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later."
- For migrating a configuration file from any MPE V based node acting as an X.25 server for NS 3000/XL based machines (including the NS X.25 3000/XL Server product) to an NS 3000/iX node that will be running NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later, refer to Appendix D, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V and NS 3000/XL Release 1.X to iX Release 2.0 or later."
- For migrating a configuration file from a node running NS 3000/V PAD to an NS 3000/iX node that will be running NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later, refer to Appendix E, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V PAD Access to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later."

This Appendix also provides an overview of the differences between networking functionality on an MPE V and an MPE/iX system you need to consider for migration.

# Differences Between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX

Differences Between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX The following paragraphs summarize differences between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX. Make sure that you account for these differences that could affect your network when migrating to NS 3000/iX. For information on operating system migration, refer to the MPE/iX Migration series.

## **Differences in Hardware**

Some NS 3000/V hardware components are not part of an NS 3000/iX network, such as the ATP for terminal connections, and the INP for network links.

On an NS 3000/iX network, the DTC provides connections for local or remote terminals and serial printers. The DTC also provides MPE/iX access to X.25 through a DTC/X.25 Network Access card. The Datacommunications and Terminal Subsystem (DTS) LANIC on the MPE/iX host is used for system-to-system X.25 connectivity.

## **Unsupported Network Connections**

Before migrating your network, identify any unsupported network connections. The network connections that are not supported on NS 3000/iX networks are as follows:

- Manual-dial modems.
- Asynchronous SERIAL Network Link and bisynchronous link-level protocol. To ease migration, you can convert Asynchronous SERIAL network links to the NS 3000/V Point-to-Point links which can be converted to NS 3000/iX. Point-to-Point links use the LAP-B protocol.
- Connections to DS/3000 nodes. DS network services are not supported on NS 3000/iX. If DS/3000 nodes are part of an existing network, either migrate them to NS 3000/V or maintain NS 3000/V connections to the DS/3000 nodes.

# **Differences in Configuration of Terminals and Printers**

On NS 3000/V networks, the SYSDUMP program is used to perform I/O configuration which includes configuring terminals, printers, and other I/O devices and drivers. On NS 3000/iX, terminals and serial printers are configured on the host (using NMMGR) and on the OpenView

Windows Workstation (using the OpenView DTC Manager software). For more information on configuration using your OpenView Windows Workstation, read *Using the OpenView DTC Manager*.

PAD devices on NS 3000/V are configured (using NMMGR) as part of the X.25 network configuration. On NS 3000/iX when PC-based network management is used, PAD devices are configured both on the host (using NMMGR) and on the OpenView Windows Workstation (using the OpenView DTC Manager software).

## **Differences in Configuration Files**

NS 3000/V network configuration files are separated into two files, the NMCONFIG file, which contains link information, and the NSCONF file, which contains the transport configuration and other subsystems you have purchased such as SNA.

NS 3000/iX systems have a single NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS file that contains information for the network transport, for NetIPC and link-level logging, and also for the Datacommunications and Terminal Subsystem (DTS). NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS also contains information for any other subsystems you have purchased such as SNA.

### **Differences in Network Services**

Differences in the support of network services between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX can affect applications that users may currently be running on the NS 3000/V network. These differences are:

- NS 3000/iX supports PTOP for HPDESK only. Network users who are running PTOP programs will need to convert them to NetIPC/RPM programs before running them on an NS 3000/iX network. Refer to the *NetIPC 3000/XL Programmer's Reference Manual* and the *Using NS 3000/iX Network Services* for more information.
- Nowait I/O RFA is not available with NS 3000/iX. Privileged mode programs that use nowait I/O Remote File Access over an NS 3000/V network will need to be modified before they can be run on an NS 3000/iX network. Refer to Using NS 3000/iX Network Services for more information.

## **To Obtain Device Status Information**

On MPE V systems, the SHOWCOM command returns status information about communication devices such as Local Area Network Interface Controllers (LANICs). On NS 3000/iX systems, this information is available with the LINKCONTROL...; STATUS command.

## **Differences in X.25 Support**

There are differences in X.25 support between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX which need to be considered when you migrate as described in the following paragraphs.

### **1980 Versus 1984 CCITT**

NS 3000/V supports CCITT 1980 and NS 3000/iX supports both 1980 and 1984.

## **General Level 3 Differences**

In MPE V X.25, a Reset *is* sent to initialize or clear a Permanent Virtual Circuit. In MPE/iX X.25, a Reset *is not* sent to initialize or clear a Permanent Virtual Circuit.

MPE V X.25 has a timeout on an interrupt collision. MPE/iX X.25 does not.

## Level 3 Access with NetIPC

In addition to the X.25 features supported on NS 3000/V, NetIPC 3000/XL provides the following CCITT 1984 features:

- Fast select facility.
- The capability of modifying and reading the facility field in call packets.
- A new option in **IPCDEST** (called the destination network address option) allows you to directly specify an X.25 address or PVC number instead of a remote node name. See the *NetIPC 3000/XL Programmers Reference Manual* for more information. If using this feature, you can configure POOL as an X.25 Address Key with its security option set to "O" (outbound) in the X.25 SVC Address Key Paths screen to allow outbound calls to any destination address.
- IPCCONTROL request 12, reason for error or event, on NS 3000/V can return 14 (network shutdown), 15 (restart sent by local network), 16 (level 2 failure), 17 (restart sent by local protocol module), and 18 (restart packet received). IPCCONTROL on NS 3000/XL only returns 10 (Clear), 11 (Reset), or 12 (Interrupt).
- In NS 3000/V, IPCSHUTDOWN does not complete until a clear confirmation arrives. In NS 3000/XL, IPCSHUTDOWN completes immediately.
- In NS 3000/V, **IPCCREATE** requires that the network name be padded with nulls. In NS 3000/XL, **IPCCREATE** requires the network name be padded with blanks.

## Facilities

Following are the supported facilities of the DTC/X.25 XL Network Link.

Supported Facilities	1984 CCITT X.25 Reference		
Extended packet sequence number	6.2		
Incoming calls barred	6.5		
Outgoing calls barred	6.6		
Nonstandard default packet size	6.9		
Nonstandard default window size	6.10		
Flow control parameter negotiation	6.12		
Throughput class negotiation	6.13		
Closed user group selection (1980 CCITT)	6.14		
Fast select request and acceptance	6.16–17		
Reverse charging and acceptance	6.18–19		
Local charging prevention	6.20		
Hunt group	6.25		
Supported Facilities with X.25 Level 3 Programmatic Access			
Closed user group related facilities	6.14		
Bilateral closed user groups	6.15		
Network user identification	6.21		
Called line modified address notification	6.26		
Call redirection and notification	6.25–27		
Transit delay selection and indication	6.28		

## Security

When configuring a host, you can now set security for each remote system using the Security field on the X.25 SVC Address Key Paths screen. System to System Local User Groups (LUGs) are now assigned on the DTC instead of on the host. The LUG provides security in the same way a CUG does, but you don't have to subscribe to a CUG. NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later **Differences in X.25 Support** 

## **Pad Support**

For complete information on migrating PAD support from NS 3000/V to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or later, refer to Appendix E, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V PAD Access to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later."

## To Convert NS 3000/V Files to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later

This conversion procedure can be used with NS 3000/V  $\tt NMCONFIG$  and  $\tt NSCONF$  files for version V-delta 3 or later.

The procedures that follow are for updating (migrating) configuration files from a node running NS X.25 3000/V Link to a node that will be running NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later. As mentioned, this appendix *does not* apply if an MPE V based node is being used as an X.25 server for NS 3000/XL based machines. When updating a node running NS X.25 3000/V Link, all NS 3000/V LAN, Point-to-Point, or NRJE as well as X.25 information will be updated to work with iX 2.0.

If you are migrating a configuration file from any MPE V based node acting as an X.25 server for NS 3000/XL based machines (including the NS X.25 3000/XL Server product) to an NS 3000/iX node that will be running NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later, see Appendix D, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V and NS 3000/XL Release 1.X to iX Release 2.0 or later." In that case, you would be merging the server's NS 3000/V configuration file with an existing NS 3000/XL 1.X configuration file. Furthermore, only X.25 information would be updated (not, LAN, NRJE, or Point-to-Point). The procedures that follow assume that there is no existing NS 3000/XL NMCONFIG file.

## To Delete Secondary NIs (NS/iX Rel. 2.2 or later)

If you are migrating from NS X.25 3000/V (release V delta 7 or later) to NS 3000/iX release 2.2 or later, make a backup copy of your NS 3000/V NSCONF file. To migrate to NS 3000/iX release 2.2 or later, you must delete the secondary NIs in the NS 3000/V NSCONF file before you use NMMGRVER to convert it.

NOTE

## To Save NS 3000/V X.25 Parameters

Make a list of the following NS 3000/V parameters that must be re-entered on the DTC.

• VC Assignment from the NS 3000/V screen with the path:

@NETXPORT.NI.niname.PROTOCOL.X25.VCSPEC

• X.25 Network type and Flow Control parms from the NS 3000/V screen with the path:

@NETXPORT.NI.niname.PROTOCOL.X25.VCSPEC. FLOWCNTL

- L.U.G. Incoming Calls from the NS 3000/V screen with the path: @NETXPORT.NI.*niname*.PROTOCOL.X25.LUGSPEC. INLUG
- L.U.G. Outgoing Calls from the NS 3000/V screen with the path: @NETXPORT.NI.niname.PROTOCOL.X25.LUGSPEC. OUTLUG

## To Copy NS 3000/V Configuration Files to NS 3000/iX System

Restore the NS 3000/V configuration files to the NS 3000/iX system. Name the NS 3000/V files with the same names they had on the NS 3000/V node, that is, NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS, and if present, NSCONF.PUB.SYS.

**Remember:** This procedure assumes that there is no configuration file on the NS 3000/iX node yet.

## To Use NMMGRVER

To use the NMMGRVER utility to convert your NS 3000/V configuration file to NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later, proceed as follows:

- Step 1. At the MPE/iX prompt, type: NMMGRVER.PUB.SYS
- Step 2. Do either steps a through c or steps d through g.

If your NS 3000/V node had only an NMCONFIG file (but no NSCONF files), follow the instructions in steps a through c.

- **a.** To convert the NMCONFIG file enter the file name: NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS.
- **b.** Enter Y to proceed when prompted.
- c. Select type 2 for NMCONFIG type file. The converted file will be saved with the file name you entered. In this case it is NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS. This is the only filename that the node will recognize as its configuration file.

If your NS 3000/V node had one or more NSCONF files, follow the instructions in steps d through g.

- **d.** Merge your NS 3000/V NSCONF file with the NS 3000/V NMCONFIG file, and convert it for use with NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later by entering a file name, for example: NSCONF1.PUB.SYS.
- e. Enter Y to proceed when prompted.
- f. Select type 1 for NSCONF type file. NMMGRVER will merge the contents of the existing NMCONFIG file with the NSCONF file you specified. It will be saved in the NSCONF file you specified. In this example, NSCONF1.
- g. If you converted more than one NSCONF file, decide which one will be the network configuration you want on the NS 3000/iX system. Rename the file to NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS.

### **To Update X.25 XL System Access Parameters**

On the NS 3000/iX host, use NMMGR to change the following parameters to provide X.25 XL System Access:

- 1. If migrating from any NS 3000/V release before release V delta 7, modify the screen at path @NETXPORT.NI.niname.PROTOCOL.X25 to change the inactivity timer from minutes to seconds.
- 2. On the screen with the path <code>@link</code>, verify that the <code>DTSLINK</code> is defined.
- 3. On the screen with the path @LINK.DTSLINK, verify that the physical path is correctly defined.

- 4. On the screen with the path @LINK, add the LINK name and Type (X25) of the X25 link. Note: to migrate to NS 3000/iX release 2.2 or later, repeat this step and steps 5 through 7 for each DTC/X.25 Network Access card.
- 5. On the screen with the path @LINK.*linkname*, where the LINK name is the one added in the previous step, add the DTC Node name and card number for the DTC/X.25 Network Access card.
- 6. On the screen with the path @NETXPORT.NI.*niname*.LINK, add the LINK name entered in Step 4.
- 7. On the screen with the path @NETXPORT.NI.*niname*.LINK.*linkname*, answer yes or no; then, press the Update key.

# **To Save X.25 XL System Access Parameters on the Host**

Make a list of the following X.25 XL System Access Parameters on the host that must be re-entered on the DTC.

- Local Node Name.
- Link Name (the X25 link, *not* the DTSLINK).
- DTC Node Name.
- DTC Card Number.
- X.25 User Facility Set Parameters.

## To Add Other Link Types as Needed

For LAN and Point-to-Point link types, run NMMGR and add the physical paths. See sections of this manual for the correct values to be entered for the physical path.

## **To Verify DTS Configuration on the Host**

If the datacommunications and terminal subsystem (DTS) has not been configured, configure the DTS parameters on the host according to the requirements of your network. For more information, refer to *Getting Started with the DTC* and *Configuring Systems for Terminals, Printers, and Other Serial Devices* if you are using PC-based network management. Refer to *Configuring and Managing Host-Based X.25 Links* if you are using host-based network management.

## To Configure the DTC

If you are using PC-based network management, configure the DTC by using the OpenView DTC Manager at your OpenView Windows Workstation. For full details, see *Using the OpenView DTC Manager*.

If you are using host-based network management, configure the DTC using NMMGR. For full details, see *Configuring and Managing Host-Based X.25 Links*.
# NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V and NS 3000/XL Release 1.X to iX

# **Release 2.0 or later**

D

This Appendix tells how to use the NMMGRVER utility to migrate a configuration file from any MPE V based node acting as an X.25 server for NS 3000/XL based machines (including the NS X.25 3000/XL Server product) to an NS 3000/iX node that will be running NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later. This appendix assumes that you want to move the X.25 configuration from the MPE V-based X.25 server to an existing NS 3000/XL node and then upgrade it to NS 3000/iX 2.0.

This appendix *does not* apply if the MPE V node you want to migrate from is not acting as an X.25 server for NS 3000/XL based machines. Refer to the following appendixes depending on which X.25 network products you currently have:

- For migrating a node's configuration file from NS 3000/XL releases 1.0, 1.1, or 1.2 to NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later, refer to Appendix B, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/XL Releases 1.0, 1.1, or 1.2 to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later."
- For migrating a configuration file from a node running NS X.25 3000/V Link to a node that will be running NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later, refer to Appendix C, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later." This appendix does not apply if the MPE V node you want to migrate from is acting as an X.25 server for NS 3000/XL based machines.
- For migrating a configuration file from a node running NS 3000/V PAD to an NS 3000/iX node that will be running NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later, refer to Appendix E, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V PAD Access to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later."

This appendix also provides an overview of the differences between networking functionality on an MPE V and an MPE/iX system you need to consider for migration.

# Differences Between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX

The following paragraphs summarize differences between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX. Make sure that you account for these differences that could affect your network when migrating to NS 3000/iX. For system migration issues, refer to the MPE/iX Migration series for more information.

# **Differences in Hardware**

Some NS 3000/V hardware components are not part of an NS 3000/iX network, such as the ATP for terminal connections, and the INP for network links.

On an NS 3000/iX network, the DTC provides connections for local or remote terminals and serial printers. The DTC also provides MPE/iX access to X.25 through a DTC/X.25 Network Access card. The Distributed Terminal Subsystem (DTS) LANIC on the MPE/iX host is used for system-to-system X.25 connectivity.

# **Unsupported Network Connections**

Before migrating your network, identify any unsupported network connections. The network connections that are not supported on NS 3000/iX networks are as follows:

- Manual-dial modems.
- Asynchronous SERIAL Network Link and bisynchronous link-level protocol. To ease migration, you can convert Asynchronous SERIAL network links to the NS 3000/V Point-to-Point links which can be converted to NS 3000/iX. Point-to-Point links use the LAP-B protocol.
- Connections to DS/3000 nodes. DS network services are not supported on NS 3000/iX. If DS/3000 nodes are part of an existing network, either migrate them to NS 3000/V or maintain NS 3000/V connections to the DS/3000 nodes.

# **Differences in Configuration of Terminals and Printers**

On NS 3000/V networks, the SYSDUMP program is used to perform I/O configuration which includes configuring terminals, printers, and other I/O devices and drivers. On NS 3000/iX, terminals and serial printers are configured on the host (using NMMGR) and, if you are using PC-based network management, on the OpenView Windows

Workstation (using the OpenView DTC Manager software). For more information on configuration using your OpenView Windows Workstation, read *Using the OpenView DTC Manager*.

PAD devices on NS 3000/V are configured (using NMMGR) as part of the X.25 network configuration. On NS 3000/iX with PC-based network management, PAD devices are configured both on the host (using NMMGR) and on the OpenView Windows Workstation (using the OpenView DTC Manager software). (With host-based network management, PAD devices are also configured using NMMGR.)

# **Differences in Configuration Files**

NS 3000/V network configuration files are separated into two files, the NMCONFIG file, which contains link information, and the NSCONF file, which contains the transport configuration and other subsystems you have purchased such as SNA.

NS 3000/iX systems have a single NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS file that contains information for the network transport, for NetIPC and link-level logging, and also for the Datacommunications and Terminal Subsystem (DTS). NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS also contains information for any other subsystems you have purchased such as SNA.

# **Differences in Network Services**

Differences in the support of network services between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX can affect applications that users may currently be running on the NS 3000/V network. These differences are:

- NS 3000/iX supports PTOP for HPDESK only. Network users who are running PTOP programs will need to convert them to NetIPC/RPM programs before running them on an NS 3000/iX network. Refer to the *NetIPC 3000/XL Programmer's Reference Manual* and the *Using NS 3000/iX Network Services* for more information.
- Nowait I/O RFA is not available with NS 3000/iX. Privileged mode programs that use nowait I/O Remote File Access over an NS 3000/V network will need to be modified before they can be run on an NS 3000/iX network. Refer to Using NS 3000/iX Network Services for more information.

# **To Obtain Device Status Information**

On MPE V systems, the SHOWCOM command returns status information about communication devices such as Local Area Network Interface Controllers(LANICs). On NS 3000/iX systems, this information is available with the LINKCONTROL...; STATUS command.

# **Differences in X.25 Support**

There are differences in X.25 support between NS 3000/V and NS 3000/iX which need to be considered when you migrate as described in the following paragraphs.

# 1980 vs. 1984 CCITT

NS 3000/V supports CCITT 1980 and NS 3000/XL supports both 1980 and 1984.

# **General Level 3 Differences**

In MPE V X.25, a Reset is sent to initialize or clear a Permanent Virtual Circuit. In MPE/iX X.25, a Reset is not sent to initialize or clear a Permanent Virtual Circuit.

MPE V X.25 has a timeout on an interrupt collision. MPE/iX X.25 does not.

# Level 3 Access with NetIPC

In addition to the X.25 features supported on NS 3000/V, NetIPC 3000/XL provides the following CCITT 1984 features:

- Fast select.
- The capability of modifying and reading the facility field in call packets.
- A new option in **IPCDEST** (called the destination network address option) allows you to directly specify an X.25 address or PVC number instead of a remote node name. See the *NetIPC 3000/XL Programmers Reference Manual* for more information. If using this feature, you can configure POOL as an X.25 Address Key with its security option set to "O" (outbound) in the X.25 SVC Address Key Paths screen to allow outbound calls to any destination address.
- IPCCONTROL request 12, reason for error or event, on NS 3000/V can return 14 (network shutdown), 15 (restart sent by local network), 16 (level 2 failure), 17 (restart sent by local protocol module), and 18 (restart packet received). IPCCONTROL on NS 3000/XL only returns 10 (Clear), 11 (Reset), or 12 (Interrupt).
- In NS 3000/V, IPCSHUTDOWN does not complete until a clear confirmation arrives. In NS3 000/XL, IPCSHUTDOWN completes immediately.
- In NS 3000/V, **IPCCREATE** requires that the network name be padded with nulls. In NS 3000/XL, **IPCCREATE** requires the network name be padded with blanks.

# Facilities

Following are the supported facilities of the DTC/X.25 XL Network Link.

Supported Facilities	1984 CCITT X.25 Reference
Extended packet sequence number	6.2
Incoming calls barred	6.5
Outgoing calls barred	6.6
Nonstandard default packet size	6.9
Nonstandard default window size	6.10
Flow control parameter negotiation	6.12
Throughput class negotiation	6.13
Closed user group selection (1980 CCITT)	6.14
Fast select request and acceptance	6.16–17
Reverse charging and acceptance	6.18–19
Local charging prevention	6.20
Hunt group	6.25
Supported Facilities with X.25 Level 3 Programmatic Access	
Closed user group related facilities	6.14
Bilateral closed user groups	6.15
Network user identification	6.21
Called line modified address notification	6.26
Call redirection and notification	6.25–27
Transit delay selection and indication	6.28

# Security

When configuring a host, you can now set security for each remote system using the **Security** field on the X.25 SVC Address Key Paths screen. System to System Local User Groups (LUGs) are now assigned on the DTC instead of on the host. The LUG provides security in the same way a CUG does, but you don't have to subscribe to a CUG. NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V and NS 3000/XL Release 1.X to iX Release 2.0 or later **Differences in X.25 Support** 

# **PAD Support**

For complete information on migrating PAD support from NS 3000/V to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0, refer to Appendix E, "NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V PAD Access to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or Later."

# To Convert MPE V-Based Server Files to NS 3000/iX Release 2.0 or later

The conversion procedure that follows is for moving an X.25 configuration from an MPE V-based X.25 server (including the NS X.25 3000/XL Server product) to an existing NS 3000/XL node and then upgrading it to NS 3000/iX 2.0.

Only the X.25 information will be taken from the MPE V-based X.25 server's NSCONF configuration file. LAN, Point-to-Point, or NRJE information will be updated from your existing NS 3000/XL NMCONFIG file. After using NMMGRVER, you will then have to perform some additional configuration steps that are described in the remainder of this Appendix.

# **To Delete Secondary NIs (NS/XL Release 2.2 or later)**

If you are migrating from NS X.25 3000/V (release V delta 7 or later) to NS 3000/iX release 2.2 or later, make a backup copy of your NS 3000/V NSCONF file. To migrate to NS 3000/iX release 2.2 or later, you must delete the secondary NIs in the NS 3000/V NSCONF file before you use NMMGRVER to convert it.

# To Save NS 3000/V X.25 Parameters

Make a list of the following NS 3000/V parameters that must be re-entered on the DTC.

- VC Assignment from the NS 3000/V screen with the path: @NETXPORT.NI.niname.PROTOCOL.X25.VCSPEC
- X.25 Network type and Flow Control parms from the NS 3000/V screen with the path: @NETXPORT.NI.niname.PROTOCOL.X25.VCSPEC. FLOWCNTL
- L.U.G. Incoming Calls from the NS 3000/V screen with the path: @NETXPORT.NI.niname.PROTOCOL.X25.LUGSPEC.INLUG
- L.U.G. Outgoing Calls from the NS 3000/V screen with the path: @NETXPORT.NI.niname.PROTOCOL.X25.LUGSPEC.OUTLUG

# To Copy NS 3000/V Configuration Files to NS 3000/iX System

Restore the NS 3000/V <code>NSCONF</code> configuration file to the NS 3000/iX system. Name the NS 3000/V file with the same name it had on the NS 3000/V node, that is, <code>NSCONF.PUB.SYS</code>.

**Remember:** This procedure assumes that there already is an NS 3000/XL 1.X NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS configuration file on the NS 3000/iX node. Do not overwrite it with the NS 3000/V version!

# To Use NMMGRVER

To use the NMMGRVER utility to merge your NS 3000/V configuration file with the NS 3000/iX <code>NMCONFIG</code> file and convert it for use with release 2.0 or later, proceed as follows:

- Step 1. At the MPE/iX prompt, type: NMMGRVER.PUB.SYS
- **Step 2.** Merge your NS X.25 3000/XL Server NSCONF file with the existing NS 3000/XL NMCONFIG file, and convert it for use with NS 3000/iX release 2.0 or later by entering a file name, for example: NSCONF1.PUB.SYS
  - **a.** Enter Y to proceed when prompted.
  - **b.** Select type 1 for NSCONF type file.

NMMGRVER will merge the contents of the existing NMCONFIG file with the NSCONF file you specified. It will be saved in the NSCONF file you specified. In this example, NSCONF1.

**Step 3.** If you converted more than one NSCONF file, decide which one will be the network configuration you want on the NS 3000/iX system. Rename the file to NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS.

## **To Update X.25 XL System Access Parameters**

On the NS 3000/iX host, use NMMGR to change the following parameters to provide X.25 XL System Access:

- 1. If migrating from any NS 3000/V release before release V delta 7, modify the screen at path @NETXPORT.NI.*niname*.PROTOCOL.X25 to change the inactivity timer from minutes to seconds.
- 2. On the screen with the path <code>@LINK</code>, verify that the <code>DTSLINK</code> is defined.
- 3. On the screen with the path @LINK.DTSLINK, verify that the physical path is correctly defined.
- 4. On the screen with the path @LINK, add the LINK name and Type (X25) of the X25 link. Note: to migrate to NS 3000/iX release 2.2 or later, repeat this step and steps 5 through 7 for each DTC/X.25 Network Access card.
- 5. On the screen with the path @LINK.*linkname*, where the LINK name is the one added in the previous step, add the DTC Node name and card number for the DTC/X.25 Network Access card.
- 6. On the screen with the path @NETXPORT.NI.*niname*.LINK, add the LINK name entered in Step 4.

NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V and NS 3000/XL Release 1.X to iX Release 2.0 or later **To Use NMMGRVER** 

7. On the screen with the path @NETXPORT.NI.niname.LINK.linkname, answer yes or no; then, press the Update key.

# **To Save X.25 XL System Access Parameters on the Host**

Make a list of the following X.25 XL System Access Parameters on the host that must be re-entered on the DTC.

- Local Node Name.
- Link Name (the X25 link, *not* the DTSLINK).
- DTC Node Name.
- DTC Card Number.
- X.25 User Facility Set Parameters.

# To Add Other Link Types as Needed

For LAN and Point-to-Point link types, run NMMGR and add the physical paths. See sections of this manual for the correct values to be entered for the physical path.

# To Verify DTS Configuration on the Host

If the datacommunications and terminal subsystem (DTS) has not been configured, configure the DTS parameters on the host according to the requirements of your network. For more information, refer to *Getting Started with the DTC* and *Configuring Systems for Terminals, Printers, and Other Serial Devices* if you are using PC-based network management. Refer to *Configuring and Managing Host-Based X.25 Links* if you are using host-based network management.

# **To Configure the DTC**

If you are using PC-based network management, configure the DTC by using the OpenView DTC Manager at your OpenView Windows Workstation. For full details, see *Using the OpenView DTC Manager*.

If you are using host-based network management, configure the DTC using NMMGR. For full details, see *Configuring and Managing Host-Based X.25 Links*.

NS X.25 Migration: NS 3000/V and NS 3000/XL Release 1.X to iX Release 2.0 or later To Configure the DTC

# A

**access port** A special interface card in the system cabinet through which the system console is connected.

**address** A numerical identifier defined and used by a particular protocol and associated software to distinguish one node from another.

# address key See X.25 address key.

**address resolution** In NS networks, the mapping of node names to IP addresses and the mapping of IP addresses to subnet addresses.

### address resolution protocol

ARP. A protocol used by LAN links with Ethernet enabled that provides a means of exchanging addressing information between Ethernet nodes.

**adjacent** A node on a point-to-point network that is connected to another node by a single link with no intervening nodes.

# **ARP** *See* address resolution protocol.

**ASCII** American National Standard Code for Information Interchange. A character set using 7-bit code used for information interchange among data processing and data communications systems. The American implementation of International Alphabet No. 5.

**asynchronous** Term used to describe a device's mode of operation whereby a sequence of operations are executed irrespective of time coincidence with any event. Devices that are directly accessible by people (for example, terminal keyboards) operate in this manner.

**attachment unit interface** The cable that runs between each node (host, DTC, or other device) and the Medium Attachment Unit (MAU) that connects it to the LAN in a ThickLAN configuration.

# AUI *See* attachment unit interface.

**autodial** A dial link in which the remote node's telephone number is automatically dialed by a modem or other device with this capability.

### В

**backbone LAN** A thick LAN cable conforming to the IEEE 802.3 Type 10 BASE 5 standard.

**back-to-back configuration** A DTC configuration whereby MPE users connected to one DTC can communicate with a non-MPE/iX system connected to another DTC via the LAN. (*See also* Local Switching)

### backup configuration file A

file that contains a copy of the information contained in the configuration file. The backup file, called NMCBACK.group.account by default, is updated each time the configuration file is successfully validated.

**banner** A welcome message displayed on your screen. On the local OpenView workstation a banner appears when a remote connection is established with the OpenView DTC Manager. A banner also can appear when you log on to MPE.

**baud** Measure of the speed at which information travels between devices, most commonly used in reference to terminal speed settings. Baud represents signal events per second. When one bit represents each signal change, baud is the same as "bits per second".

**binary mode** Data transfer scheme in which no special character processing is performed. All characters are considered to be data and are passed through with no control actions being taken.

**bit** Binary digit. A unit of information that designates one of two possible states, which are represented by either 1 or 0.

**block mode** Terminal processing mode in which groups, or "blocks," of data are transmitted all at once. **BNC T-Connector** Connector used to connect a computer or a component such as a DTC to the LAN in a ThinLAN configuration.

# boundry *See* network boundary.

**bps** Bits per second. The number of bits passing a point per second.

**broadcast** Communication method of sending a message to all devices on a link simultaneously.

**byte** A sequence of eight consecutive bits operated on as a unit.

### С

**call** In X.25, a call is an attempt to set up communication between two DTEs using a virtual circuit. Also known as a virtual call.

**call collision** A conflict that occurs at a DTE/DCE interface when there is a simultaneous attempt by the DTE and DCE to set up a call using the same logical channel identifier.

**called address** When a node sends out a call request packet, the packet contains the address of the destination node. The address of the destination node is the called address.

**calling address** When a node receives an incoming call packet, the packet contains the address of

the sending node. The address of the sending node is the calling address.

**carrier** A continuous wave that is modulated by an information bearing signal.

#### catenet See internetwork.

**CCITT** Consultative Committee for International Telephony and Telegraphy. An international organization of communication carriers, especially government telephone monopolies, responsible for developing telecommunication standards by making recommendations. No carrier is required to adhere to a CCITT recommendation, although most do so in their own interest.

**CIB** The channel input/output bus in the backplane of an HP 3000.

#### circuit-switching network A

type of data communications network wherein a physical and exclusive link is maintained between two communicating devices for the call duration. An all-digital, circuit-switching network is often referred to as an X.21 network.

**closed user group** An X.25 user facility that allows communication to and from a pre-specified group of users and no one else.

**compatibility mode** Processing mode on HP 3000 Series 900 computers that allows applications written for MPE V/E-based systems to be ported and run without changes or recompilation.

**computer network** A group of computer systems connected in such a way that they can exchange information and share resources.

**configuration** 1) The way in which computer equipment is physically interconnected and set up to operate as a system.

2) The layout of the computer system, including the MPE table, memory, and buffer sizes, that tells which peripheral devices are (or can be) connected to the computer and how they can be accessed.

3) The process of defining the characteristics of a network in software. For MPE/iX-based computers, the operating systems are configured through use of the SYSGEN utility. Next, the distributed terminal subsystem (DTS) link is configured by using NMMGR (running on the host) and may, in addition, be configured using the OpenView DTC Manager software (running on the OpenView Windows Workstation) depending on the type of network management you use. If any of the NS link products are installed on the system, network configuration is accomplished through use of

NMMGR and, if PC-based X.25 connections are required, through the OpenView DTC Manager.

**configuration file** The configuration file, which you create and update using the NMMGR utility, contains:

1) the information that the network needs in order to operate.

2) Information necessary for link-level and NetIPC logging.

3) Information required to connect terminals and printers to the system through one or more DTC.

The only file name that the system recognizes as the configuration file is NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS.

**control-X echo** Three exclamation marks (!!!) output to the terminal screen when the cancel character (normally [CTRL]-X) is entered.

**control-Y trap** User-written procedure to which control is passed when the subsystem break character (normally **[CTRL]-Y**) is entered during execution of a program with subsystem break enabled.

**cross-validate** The process of assuring that information contained in two locations is consistent where it is imperative that it be consistent. For example, an automatic cross-validation occurs when you enter SYSGEN to assure that information contained in NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS agrees with system configuration data.

**CSMA/CD** Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detect, transmission access method used by the IEEE 802.3 LAN standard.;

CSN *See* circuit-switching network.

**CTB** The cache transfer bus in the backplane of an HP 3000.

### CUG See closed user group.

### D

**data** Basic elements of information that can be processed or produced by a computer.

### datacommunications and Terminal Controller See DTC.

**data overrun** Transmitted data that is sent faster than the equipment on the receiving end is capable of receiving it. The resulting overflow data is lost. *See also* **flow control**.

**Datapac** The national public PSN of Canada.

**Datex-P** The national public PSN of West Germany.

**D bit** Delivery confirmation bit. Used in the X.25 protocol, the setting of the D bit in DATA packets indicates whether

delivery acknowledgment of the packet is required from the local DCE or from the remote DTE. It therefore allows the choice between local and end-to-end acknowledgment.

**DCE** Data circuit-terminating equipment. The interfacing equipment required in order to interface to data terminal equipment (DTE) and its transmission circuit. Synonyms: data communications equipment, dataset.

**DDX** The national public PSN of Japan.

**dedicated printer** A printer that can be used by only one host on the LAN; the one specified in the Destination Node Name in that printer's configuration screen.

**default gateway** One (and only one) gateway accessible by a system may be designated as a default gateway. The network will then send any transmitted messages for which it is unable to locate a destination through normal means to the default gateway in a final effort to determine a transmission route.

**demodulation** The process by which the information-bearing signal is retrieved from a modulated carrier wave. The inverse of modulation. **destination node name** In DTS configuration, it is either 1) the name of a host that a user can be connected to by default (if switching is not enabled for that user, or if automatic modem connection is enabled), or 2) the name of the only host that can access a dedicated printer.

**device class** A collection of devices that have some user-defined relation. Device classes are assigned through use of the NMMGR configuration utility.

**device-dependent characteristic** A file specification for which modifications are restricted because of the type of device on which the file is opened. For example, data directed to terminals must have a blocking factor of one.

**device driver** Software module that controls a specific type of input/output device including NS 3000/iX links.

**devicefile** A file being input to or output from any peripheral device except a disk. MPE allows operations to be performed on the device itself as if it were a file.

**device independence** A characteristic of the operating system that allows users to selectively redirect input/output from a program, session, or job without regard to the nature of the device.

#### device name See PAD name.

**Dial ID protocol** A proprietary Hewlett-Packard protocol that provides security checking and address exchange for dial links.

**dial link** A connection made through public telephone lines.

### direct-connect device

Asynchronous device that is connected directly to a DTC through an RS-232-C or RS-422 cable, with no intervening communications equipment. Also referred to as a "local connection."

**direct connection** A leased line, private line, or other non-switched link in a network.

**direct dial** A dial link through which only one remote node can be reached.

#### direct-path branching he

process of directly accessing any screen in NMMGR by entering path names in the Command: field. The path name must be preceded by an at sign (@).

#### **domain name** A name designated for a system in ARPANET standard format. This name can be used by other nodes on the network to access the host for which it is configured.

**download** The process of loading operating code and configuration files into the DTC's memory. The DTC is downloaded by the host computer for LANs using host-based network management, and by the PC for DTCs managed by the OpenView DTC Manager.

### driver See device driver.

**DTC** Datacommunications and Terminal Controller. The DTC is a hardware device, configured as a node on a LAN, that enables asynchronous devices to access HP 3000 Series 900 computers. Terminals can either be directly connected to the DTC, or they can be remotely connected through modem or through a Packet Assembler Disassembler (PAD).

**DTC identifier** An identifier used only within NMMGR to define the branch of the configuration file containing information about a particular DTC. The identifier must begin with a letter and can be up to eight characters long.

# DTC Manager See OpenView DTC Manager.

**DTC node name** Unique name used to identify a DTC on the LAN. Node name format is nodename.domain.organization, with each of the three parts having up to 16 characters and beginning with either a letter or a digit.

DTC station address (802.3

**address)** 2-digit hexadecimal number used to identify the DTC as a node belonging to the network configuration. Also called the LAN address.

**DTC switching** A facility

enabling terminal users to select any host system that they want to connect to. DTC switching is available only when the OpenView DTC Manager is used for network management.

#### DTC/X.25 Network Access he

X.25 software that resides on the Datacommunications and Terminal Controller (DTC). To configure access to an X.25 network, you must configure two software components: the X.25 iX System Access (residing on the HP 3000 host). and the DTC/X.25 Network Access. DTC/X.25 Network Access is configured through use of the OpenView DTC Manager software for systems using PC-based network management or through NMMGR for systems using host-based network management.

### **DTC/X25** Network Access

**Card** This is the hardware card and channel adapter that provides X.25 Network Access. It resides in the Datacommunications and Terminal Controller (DTC).

### DTC/X.25 iX Network Link

Software and hardware that provides access to private and public X.25 networks. The X.25 iX System Access software resides on an HP 3000 host and is configured through use of NMMGR. **DTE** Data terminal equipment. Equipment that converts user information into data-transmission signals or reconverts received data signals into user information. Data terminal equipment operates in conjunction with data circuit-terminating equipment.

**DTS** Distributed terminal subsystem. This consists of all the Datacommunications and Terminal Controllers (DTCs) on a LAN, their LANIC cards (attached to the host), the LAN cable, and the host and DTC software that controls all related DTS hardware.

**duplex** Transmission method that allows two-way communication. If both ends of the transmission link can transmit simultaneously, it is called full duplex. If only one end can transmit at a time, it is half-duplex transmission.

### Ε

**entry priority** The ranking that identifies the most desirable route used to reach a given remote node from a given local node in a point-to-point network.

**environment** A session that is established on a remote node.

**escape from data transfer character** A character that allows a user who is connected to a host system through the DTC to break that connection and return

to the DTC switching user interface. The default is [CTRL]-K. This character is used only on networks managed by the OpenView Windows Workstation.

**escape sequence** A sequence of characters beginning with the escape character and followed by one or more other characters, used to convey control directives to printers, plotters, or terminals.

**Ethernet** A Local Area Network system that uses baseband transmission at 10 Mbps over coaxial cable. Ethernet is a trademark of Xerox Corporation.

**event log** One of three circular files stored on the OpenView workstation containing lists of all significant events reported by the DTCs for which it is the owner; that is, whose operating software/configuration it has downloaded.

**extended packet sequence numbering** One of the optional network subscribed facilities that provides packet sequence numbering using modulo 128. If not subscribed, modulo 8 is used.

### F

**facility** An optional service offered by a packet switching network's administration and requested by the user either at the time of subscription for network access or at the time a call is made. Also known as user facility. **facility set** A facility set defines the various X.25 connection parameters and X.25 facilities that can be negotiated for each virtual circuit on a per-call basis.

**fast select** An optional packet-switching network facility by which user data may be transmitted as part of the control packets that establish and clear a virtual connection.

**FCS** Frame check sequence. A sequence of bits generated by X.25 at level 2 that forms part of the frame and guarantees the integrity of its frame's content. The FCS is also used by the IEEE802.3 protocol to check the validity of frames.

**FDDI** Fiber Distributed Data Interface. A set of ANSI standards that define a 100 Mb/s timed token passing protocol LAN that uses fiber optic cable as the transmission medium. FDDI is a specification for a high-speed fiber-optic ring network.

**file equation** Assignment statement used to associate a file with a specific device or type of device during execution of a program.

**file number** Unique number associated with a file when the file is opened. The file number is returned in the FOPEN or HPFOPEN call used to open the file. It can be used to access that file until the file is closed.

**file specification** The name and location of a file. The full specification for a file includes the file name, group, and account.

**file system** The part of the operating system that handles access to input/output devices (including those connected through the DTC), data blocking, buffering, data transfers, and deblocking.

**flow control** A means of regulating the rate at which data transfer takes place between devices to protect against data overruns.

**flow control negotiation** One of the network subscribed facilities, selected at subscription time. This facility allows the flow control parameter to be negotiated at call set-up time, as opposed to having a predefined value.

**formal file designator** Name that can be used programmatically or in a file equation to refer to a file.

**FOS** Fundamental operating system. The programs, utilities, and subsystems supplied on the master installation tape that form the basic core of the operating system.

**full gateway** A full gateway is a node that belongs to more than one network and has one IP address for each network. It uses

store and forward to transfer packets between each network that it belongs to.

### G

**gateway** A node that connects two dissimilar network architectures. A gateway can be either a single node (full gateway) or two gateway halves.

**gateway half** A node that works in conjunction with another node on another network to form an internetwork. The only protocol used by gateway halves is the NS Point-to-Point 3000/iX Link. *See also* **full gateway**.

**gateway-half link** A link between the two nodes of a gateway-half pair. Each of the two nodes of a gateway-half pair has a configured link (hardware interface card) that is used for the gateway half network interface. The NS Point-to-Point 3000/iX Link is the only link that can be used as a gateway-half link.;

**gateway-half pair** A set of two nodes that are joined by a gateway-half link. Each node in the pair must have a gateway-half network interface configured, using the link.

**guided configuration** A method of configuring a node in which a subset of the complete NMMGR interface is presented and defaults of configurable values are used automatically.

### H

handshaking A communications protocol between devices or between a device and the CPU. Provides a method of determining that each end of a communications link is ready to transmit or receive data and that transmission has occurred without error.

# hop count *See* internet hop count and intranet hop count

### host-based network

**management** Method of managing asynchronous communications for HP 3000 Series 900 computers. All of the control software is configured on a single host and is downloaded to the DTCs that are managed by that host. With host-based management, there is a permanent relationship between each DTC and the host, and terminal users can access only the single system that owns the DTC their terminal is connected to.

**host-based X.25** The management of X.25 network connections from a host computer. Host-based X.25 network connections are made through a DTC Network Access card installed in a DTC managed by the host. All configuration is accomplished using the NMMGR utility. It is not necessary for a PC to be part of the LAN when you are using host-based X.25. **host computer** The primary or controlling computer on a network. The computer on which the network control software resides. For HP purposes, it may also be used to distinguish the HP 3000 Series 900 system (host) from the DTC.

**HP block mode** Block mode transmission method employed by HP computers where the system controls the block mode handshake. When HP block mode is used, the user program need not concern itself with data transfer protocol.

**HP PPN** Hewlett-Packard Private Packet Network. Hewlett-Packard's own packet-switching X.25 network, which gives users full control over the administration and security of their data communications.

**HP TS8** A terminal server that can support up to eight asynchronous serial connections. When used in back-to-back configuration, users can access HP 3000 MPE/V systems on it via a DTC.

### Ι

**idle device timeout** Timeout defined by the Configure: CPU command. When the timer lapses, a device connected to the DTC user interface that is still inactive will be disconnected.

**IEEE 802.3** A standard for a broadcast local area network published by the Institute for Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). This standard is used for both the ThinLAN and ThickLAN implementations of the LAN.

#### IEEE 802.3 multicast address

A hexadecimal number that identifies a set of nodes. This address is used for multicast delivery.

**IEEE 802.3 nodal address** A unique hexadecimal number that identifies a node on an IEEE 802.3 LAN.

**IEEE 902.5** A standard for a token ring network published by the Institute for Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). This standard is used for the Token Ring 3000/iX Network Link.

**initialization string** A sequence of control characters used to initialize a terminal, printer, or plotter when a connection is established from a host on the network.

#### interactive communications

Processing that allows users to enter commands and data at the terminal and receive an immediate response.

**internet hop count** The number of full gateways plus the number of gateway-half links that a packet must pass through in moving from source node to destination.

**internet protocol** A protocol used to provide routing between different local networks in an internetwork, as well as among nodes in the same local network. The internet protocol corresponds to layer 3, the network layer, of the OSI model. *See also* **IP address**.

**internet routing** Internet routing involves all the processes required to route a packet from a node on one network to a destination node on another network.

**internetwork** Two or more networks joined by gateways, bridges, or routers.

#### intranet communication

Communication that occurs between nodes in a single network.

**intranet hop count** The number of intermediate nodes that lie between a source and destination node on the same point-to-point network.

**intranet routing** Intranet routing involves all the processes required to route a packet from one node in a network to another node in the same network.

**intrinsic** System routine accessible by user programs which provides an interface to operating system resources and functions. Intrinsics perform common tasks such as file access and device control.

### **IP** See internet protocol.

**IP address** Internet protocol address. An address used by the Internet Protocol to perform internet routing. A complete IP address comprises a network portion and a node portion. The network portion of the IP address identifies a network, and the node portion identifies a node within the network.

# IP subnet mask *See* subnet mask.

**ISO** International Standards Organization. An international federation of national standards organizations involved in developing international standards, including communication standards

### L

LAN Local Area Network. A collection of data communication systems sharing a common cable whereby each system can communicate directly with another.

# LAN address *See* station address.

LANIC See Local Area Network Interface Controller. **LANIC physical path** The physical location (slot number) of the LANIC within the SPU.

**LANIC self-test** A ROM-based program on a LANIC card that tests and reports the status of the LANIC hardware.

**LAP** Link access protocol. The data link protocol specified by older versions (prior to 1980) of X.25 at level 2 but still permitted and therefore usable. All new implementations of X.25 must use LAP-B, and all old implementations must migrate to LAP-B at a future date.

LAP-B Link access protocol balanced. The data link protocol specified by the 1980 version of X.25 at level 2 that determines the frame exchange procedures. LAP-B must also be used over direct-connect NS Point-to-Point 3000/iX Links.

**LCI** Logical channel identifier. Local value on a network node which identifies the channel used to establish a virtual circuit (SVC or PVC) through an X.25 network.

# ldev *See* logical device number.

**leased line** Data-grade telephone line leased directly to a subscriber and allocated specifically for the subscriber's needs.

**line speed** Speed at which data is transferred over a specific physical link (usually measured in bits or kilobits per second).

**link name** The name that represents a hardware interface card. The link name can contain as many as eight characters. All characters except the first can be alphanumeric; the first character must be alphabetic.

### Local Area Network Interface Controller (LANIC) A

hardware card that fits into the backplane of the HP 3000 Series 900 computer and provides a physical layer interface for local area networks.

# local connection *See* direct connection.

**local node** The computer that you are configuring or that you are logged on to.

**local switching** Feature of the DTC which permits back-to-back configuration (for connections to an HP 3000 MPE/V host), using two ports of the same DTC.

**local user group** A list defined for a particular DTC and card that specifies which remote nodes this DTC can send data to and also which remote nodes this DTC can receive data from. (*See also* **Closed User Group**). **logging** The process of recording the usage of network resources. Events can be logged to both the OpenView workstation and to the MPE host.

**logging class** A number defining the severity of any given event logged. An operator uses the logging classes to specify which events are to be logged. Class 1 (catastrophic event) is always logged.

### logical device number (ldev)

A value by which the operating system recognizes a specific device. All DTC devices that are configured as nailed devices through the NMMGR configuration have ldev numbers permanently assigned. The DTC devices can then be accessed programmatically through use of their ldev number. Non-nailed devices have ldev numbers that are assigned from a pool of available ldev numbers for the life of their connection to a system. You cannot access non-nailed devices programmatically.

**log off** The termination of a job or session.

**log on** The process of initiating a job or session.

# logon device *See* session-accepting device.

**loopback** The routing of messages from a node back to itself.

### LUG See local user group.

### Μ

**map, network** A drawing that shows the topology of the network. For networks managed by the OpenView DTC Manager, a network map must be created through use of the OVDraw capability provided with the management software. A network map is also a hardcopy drawing used when planning a network. It shows network topology, node and network names, addresses, network boundaries (for an internetwork map), and link types.

**mapping** A set of characteristics that describe a route taken by messages to reach a destination node. This set of characteristics is configured with NMMGR at every node on a point-to-point network. One mapping is configured at each node for every other node on the network to which messages will be sent.

# MAU *See* medium attachment unit.

**M bit** More data bit. Setting this bit in a DATA packet indicates that at least one more DATA packet is required to complete a message of contiguous data.

### medium attachment unit A

device attached to a ThickLAN coaxial cable that provides the

physical and electrical connection from the AUI cable to the coaxial cable.

**MIT** Master installation tape. Magnetic tape containing the fundamental operating system for a HP 3000 Series 900 computer.

**modem** Modulator/demodulator. A device that modulates and demodulates signals. Primarily used for modulating digital signals onto carriers for transmission and for performing the inverse function at the receiving end. Modems are essential for transmitting and receiving digital signals over telephone lines.

**modulo** Value used as the counting cycle for determining the send sequence number (N(S)) of frames sent across an X.25 network.

**modulation** Process in which certain characteristics of a carrier signal are altered in accordance with the changes of an information-bearing signal.

**MPE/iX** MultiProgramming Executive/integrated POSIX. The operating system of HP 3000 Series 900 computers. The NS 3000/iX network services operate in conjunction with the MPE/iX operating system.

**multiplexer** A device that allows multiple communication links to use a single channel.

### Ν

**nailed device** A device with a permanently associated ldev that was assigned through the NMMGR configuration of the host system on which the association is established. Nailed devices can be accessed programmatically through their ldev number. In contrast, non-nailed devices have ldev numbers that are assigned from a pool of available ldev numbers for the life of their connection to a system.

**native mode** The run-time environment of MPE/iX. In Native Mode, source code has been compiled into the native instruction set of the HP 3000 Series 900 computer.

**neighbor gateway** A gateway that is in the same network as a given node.

**NetIPC** Network Interprocess Communication. Software that enables programs to access network transport protocols

**network** A group of computers connected so that they can exchange information and share resources.

**network address** This can be either 1) the network portion of an IP address as opposed to the node portion, or 2) when referring to X.25 networks, it is a node's X.25 address. **network boundary** The logical division between networks in an internetwork.

**network directory** A file containing information required for one node to communicate with other nodes in 1) an internetwork, 2) an X.25 network, or 3) a network that contains non-HP nodes. The active network directory on a node must be named NSDIR.NET.SYS.

**network interface** (NI). The collective software that enables data communication between a system and a network. A node possesses one or more network interfaces for each of the networks to which it belongs. Network interface types are LAN, point-to-point (router), X.25, token ring, SNA, loopback, and gateway half. The maximum number of supported NIs is 12, one of which is reserved for loopback.

**network management** The collective tasks required to design, install, configure, maintain, and if necessary, change a network.

**network map** A drawing that shows the topology of the network. For networks managed by the OpenView DTC Manager, a network map must be created through use of the OVDraw capability provided with the management software. A network map is also a hardcopy drawing used when planning a network. It

shows network topology, node and network names, addresses, network boundaries (for an internetwork map), and link types.

**Network Services** NS. Software application products that can be used to access data, initiate processes, and exchange information among nodes in the network. The NS 3000/iX Network Services include RPM, VT, RFA, RDBA, and NFT.

#### network subscribed facilities

A set of parameters that the user chooses when he subscribes to the X.25 network; they include flow control negotiation, use of D-bit, throughput class negotiation and extended packet sequence numbering.

**network transport** Software that corresponds to layers 4 and 3 of the OSI network architecture model. The function of this software is to send data out over the appropriate communications link, to receive incoming data, and to route incoming or outgoing data to the appropriate destination node.

**NFT** Network File Transfer. The network service that transfers disc files between nodes on a network.

#### NI See network interface.

**NMCBACK.PUB.SYS** The default file name for the file that contains a copy of the information

contained in the configuration file (NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS). The backup file is updated each time the configuration file is successfully validated.

NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS A file

that contains all the network configuration data for the HP 3000 Series 900 computer on which it resides. It includes information about the DTCs that can access the system as well as information about any Network Services (NS) products running on the system. This is the only file name allowed.

**NMDUMP** Node management services trace/log file analyzer. A utility used to format log and trace files.

**NMMAINT** Node management services maintenance utility. A utility that lists the software module version numbers for all HP AdvanceNet products, including NS 3000/iX. It detects missing or invalid software modules.

**NMMGR** Node management services configuration manager. A software subsystem that enables you to configure DTC connectivity and network access parameters for a HP 3000 Series 900 computer.

NMMGRVER Node

management services conversion utility. A conversion program that converts configuration files

created with NMMGR from an earlier version to the latest format.

**NMSAMP1.PUB.SYS** Sample configuration file supplied with FOS that can be used as a template for DTS configuration.

**node** A computer that is part of a network. The DTC is also considered to be a node and has its own address.

**node address** The node portion of an IP address, which consists of a node portion and a network portion.

#### node management services configuration manager *See* NMMGR.

**node name** A character string that uniquely identifies each system in a network or internetwork. Each node name in a network or internetwork must be unique; however, a single node can be identified by more than one node name.

**node names list** List defined on the OpenView workstation and subsequently downloaded to all DTCs for which it is the "owner." The list specifies all the HP 3000 Series 900 hosts on the LAN that are accessible from the DTCs.

**non-adjacent** Describes a node on an NS Point-to-Point 3000/iX network that is separated from a given node by intervening or intermediate node. non-nailed device A session accepting device that is not permanently associated with an ldev number at configuration time. When the user at such a device logs on to a HP 3000 Series 900, an ldev is assigned from a pool of ldevs set aside for this purpose at configuration time. The association between a non-nailed device and this temporarily assigned ldev exists only for the duration of the session. One advantage of the use of non-nailed device connections is that configuration is simplified, since it is not required that each non-nailed device be individually configured.

**NS 3000/iX** A Hewlett-Packard data communication product that provides networking capabilities for HP 3000 Series 900 minicomputers. NS 3000/iX consists of one or more links and network services.

NS 3000/iX Link Software and hardware that provides the connection between nodes on a network. Some of the NS 3000/iX links available are the ThinLAN 3000/iX Link and its ThickLAN option, the DTC/X.25 iX Network Link, the NS Point-to-Point 3000/iX Link, and the Token Ring 3000/iX Network Link.

#### NS 3000/iX Network Services

Software applications that can be used to access data, initiate processes, and exchange

information among nodes in a network. The services are RPM, VT, RFA, RDBA, and NFT.

#### NS Point-to-Point 3000/iX

Link Hardware and software necessary to create networks in which data is transmitted from node to node over a defined route until it reaches its destination. This technique is referred to as store and forward. Systems in a point-to-point network are connected by means of leased or dial-up telephone lines. HP 3000 systems attach to the point-to-point network via HP 3000 Programmable Serial Interface (PSI) cards that fit into the back of each system's SPU.

**NSDIR.NET.SYS** Name of the active network directory file. *See Also* **network directory**.

### 0

**octet** An eight-bit byte operated upon as an entity.

### **OpenView DTC Manager**

OpenView Windows application that enables you to configure, control, monitor, and troubleshoot the operation of the datacommunications and terminal subsystems on the LAN.

### **OpenView Admin** An

OpenView windows program that enables you to configure how your OpenView Windows applications will function. For example, it enables you to set a default map for the OpenView DTC Manager. **OpenView Draw** An OpenView windows program that enables you to draw the network map, and to label the components on it.

**OpenView Run** An OpenView windows program that covers most of the control features used by the DTC Manager, including monitoring and diagnostic functions.

**OpenView Windows** The set of three programs: OV Admin, OV Draw and OV Run, running on the OpenView workstation under MS Windows, that acts as the platform for all OpenView applications, such as DTC Manager.

### **OpenView Windows**

**Workstation** The personal computer that provides software downloads to enable operation of the Datacommunications and Terminal Controller (DTC). The configuration software that runs on this workstation is called the OpenView DTC Manager software.

**OSI model** Open Systems Interconnection model. A model of network architecture devised by the International Standards Organization (ISO). The OSI model defines seven layers of a network architecture, with each layer performing specified functions.

### Р

**packet** A block of data whose maximum length is fixed. The unit of information exchanged by X.25 at level 3. There are DATA packets and various control packets. A packet type is identified by the encoding of its header.

#### packet exchange protocol

PXP. A transport layer protocol used in NS 3000/iX links to initially establish communication between nodes when NetIPC socket registry is used.

#### packet-switched network

**name** The name of a data communication network adhering to the CCITT X.25 recommendation. This can be a PDN or a private network, such as the HP PPN.

# PAD (packet assembler/disassembler) A

device that converts asynchronous character streams into packets that can be transmitted over a packet switching network (PSN).

**PAD name** A name of up to eight characters that is associated with a configured PAD device. The PAD name is known to both the DTC and the host systems that the device can access.

**PAD profile** Terminal or printer profile that specifies the configuration characteristics for PAD-connected devices. **partner gateway half** When gateway halves are used, two gateway halves are required in order to provide communication between two networks. Each is the partner of the other.

**path name** When configuring with NMMGR, you can type a string in the COMMAND: field on display screens to branch to another screen. Each screen has a unique path name that corresponds to its location in the hierarchy of configuration screens presented by NMMGR.

**PDN** Public data network. A data communication network whose services are available to any user willing to pay for them. Most PDNs use packet switching techniques.

**point-to-point** A link that connects either two nodes in an NS Point-to-Point 3000/iX network or two gateway halves.

**port** An outlet through which a device can be connected to a computer, consisting of a physical connection point and controlling hardware, controlling software, and configurable port characteristics. Ports can be thought of as data paths through which a device communicates with the computer.

**Precision Architecture** The hardware design structure for the HP 3000 Series 900 computer family.

**printer name** Character string of up to 16 characters specified in the DTC Manager configuration (for networks using OpenView Network Management) to define a printer by name. Can be shared by several printers (port pool).

**printer profile** A set of configuration characteristics that can be associated with one or more printers through the NMMGR configuration. Printer profile specifications include the printer type, line speed, device class assignment, and other values relevant to printers connected through a DTC.

**printer type** A collection of characteristics that cause a printer connected to a HP 3000 Series 900 system to act and react in a specified manner. You can configure a printer to use one of the system-supplied printer types or you can create custom printer types using workstation configurator.

**privileged mode** A capability assigned to accounts, groups, or users allowing unrestricted memory access, access to privileged CPU instructions, and the ability to call privileged procedures.

**probe protocol** An HP protocol used by NS 3000/iX IEEE 802.3 networks to obtain information about other nodes on the network. **probe proxy server** A node on an IEEE 802.3 network that possesses a network directory. A probe proxy server can provide a node with information about other nodes on the same or other networks of an internetwork.

**profile** method of grouping device connection specifications and characteristics so that the set of characteristics can be easily associated with groups of like devices. *See also* **printer profile, terminal profile**.

program captive device *See* programmatic device.

**Programmable Serial Interface** PSI. A hardware card that fits into the backplane of the HP 3000 Series 900 computer. It provides a physical layer interface for NS Point-to-Point 3000/iX Links.

**programmatic device** A device operating under control of a program running on a computer. Programmatic devices can be used for input, output, or both, depending on the device and how it is opened by the controlling program.

**protocol** A set of rules that enables two or more data processing entities to exchange information. In networks, protocols are the rules and conventions that govern each layer of network architecture.

They define what functions are to be performed and how messages are to be exchanged.

# **PSI** *See* **Programmable Serial Interface**.

**PSN** Packet-switching network. Any data communication network using packet-switching techniques wherein data is disassembled into packets at a source interface and reassembled into a data stream at a destination interface. A public PSN offers the service to any paying customer.

**PSS** Packet-Switching System. The national public PSN of the United Kingdom.

**PVC** Permanent virtual circuit. A permanent logical association between two physically separate DTEs that does not require call set-up or clearing procedures.

# **PXP** *See* **packet exchange protocol**.

### Q

**Q bit** Qualified bit. When set in DATA packets the Q bit signifies that the packet's user data is a control signal for the remote device, not a message for its user.

**QuickVal** A software program that tests whether Network Services are operating correctly between nodes.

### R

**RDBA** Remote data base access. A network service that allows users to access data bases on remote nodes.

**reachable network** A network that can be accessed (with additional internet hops possibly required) by a particular gateway.

### remote connect device

Asynchronous device that is connected to a DTC indirectly, using a modem and telephone hook-up, or a PAD.

**remote node** A node on an internetwork other than the node you are currently using or referring to.

**retransmission count (N2)** The maximum number of times a frame will be retransmitted following the expiration of the retransmission timer, T1.

### retransmission timer (T1)

Length of time the transmitter will wait for an acknowledgment from the destination address before attempting to retransmit the frame. When choosing this value, factors like the line speed and maximum frame size should be taken into account.

**RFA** Remote file access. A network service that allows users to access files and devices on remote nodes.

router network *See* point-to-point.

**routing** The path that packets, or fragments of a message, take through a network to reach a destination node.

**RPM** Remote process management. A network service that allows a process to programmatically initiate and terminate other processes throughout a network from any node on the network.

**RS-232-C** Electronic Industries Association (EIA) level 1 protocol specification that defines electrical circuit functions for 25 connector pins. HP provides two implementations of this standard: a 3-pin version for direct connections up to a distance of 15 meters (50 feet), and a version which makes use of additional circuits and can be used for either modem or direct connections.

**RS-422** Electronic Industries Association (EIA) level 1 protocol specification implemented by HP in a 5-pin version which can be used for direct device connection up to a distance of 1500 meters (4000 feet).

### S

### security string An

alphanumeric character string that functions as a password for dial links. The security string is used by the dial IP protocol. **serial device** Any device that is attached to and communicates with a computer by means of a serial transmission interface. Terminals, printers, and plotters are among the devices that communicate serially with HP 3000 Series 900 computers.

**serial transmission** Method of transferring data in which characters are transmitted one bit at a time and received one bit at a time in the order of transmission. This transmission scheme is employed by devices connected to the system via the DTC.

**session-accepting device** A terminal or personal computer running in terminal-emulation mode that is able to establish an interactive (conversational) session with an HP 3000 computer. Also referred to as a logon device.

**shared dial** A dial link that provides connection to more than one remote system, although to only one at a time.

**shared-line access** Feature that allows two or more HP 3000 Series 900 hosts to use the same DTC/X.25 Network Access card on a DTC to access an X.25 network.

**SIC** Serial interface card. Card installed in the front of the DTC that acts as an interface between a corresponding connector card (CC) and the DTC's processor.
**slaved device** A device that shares the same DTC port as another device and is connected to the other device, referred to as its master, by a cable. The actions of the slaved device are controlled by the master device.

**spooled device** A printer that is accessed through the spooling facility. The spooling facility allows a nonsharable device to be shared among several users by temporarily storing output data on disc and managing the selection of output spool files destined for the spooled device.

**start bit** Data bit used to signal the start of a character being transmitted in an asynchronous communication mode.

**station address** 12-digit hexadecimal link-level address used by the IEEE 802.3 protocol. Every node on an IEEE 802.3 network has its own station address.

**stop bit** Data bit used to signal the end of a character being transmitted in an asynchronous communication mode.

**store and forward** A technique in which messages are passed from one node to another in a network to reach their destination. Point-to-point networks use the store and forward technique to transmit messages. **subnet** Another name for a network, especially if the network is part of an internetwork. The word subnet is also a synonym for intranet.

**subnet mask** Grouping of bits that determines which bits of the IP address will be used to define a subnetwork. The subnet mask is configured using the NMMGR utility and specified in the same format as an IP address.

**SVC** Switched virtual circuit. Path through an X.25 network that is established at call set-up time.

## switching See DTC switching.

**Switching user interface** User interface available when DTC switching is enabled that allows terminal users to choose the HP 3000 Series 900 computer with which they want to establish a communication link.

**synchronous** A mode of operation or transmission whereby a continuous data stream is generated without intervals between characters. The data stream is synchronized by clock signals at the receiver and transmitter. As a result, fast transmission speeds (above 9600 bps) are attainable

**SYSGEN** The software program that allows you to configure the operating system on HP 3000 Series 900 computers. **system configuration** The way you tell the operating system what peripheral I/O devices are attached and what parameters are required for system operation.

# Т

**TCP** *See* **transmission control protocol**.

**telenet** A proprietary public data network in the USA.

**termDSM** Terminal online diagnostic support manager. A utility that provides diagnostic services for DTC connections by means of a series of commands accessible through the SYSDIAG utility. TermDSM is used only when DTCs are managed by a host system.

**terminal name** Character string of up to 16 characters specified in the OpenView DTC Manager configuration (for networks using OpenView Network Management) to define a terminal by name. May be shared by several terminals (pool port).

**terminal profile** A set of configuration characteristics that can be associated with one or more terminals through the NMMGR configuration. Terminal profile specifications include the terminal type, line speed, device class assignment, and other values relevant to terminals connected through a DTC. **terminal type** A collection of characteristics that cause a terminal connected to an MPE system to act and react in a specified manner. You may configure a terminal to use one of the system-supplied terminal types, or you may create custom terminal types using the workstation configurator.

**ThinLAN** LAN media that conforms to the IEEE 802.3 Type 10 BASE 2 standard LAN.

# ThinLAN 3000/iX Link

Hardware and software necessary to create a broadcast network, which uses the IEEE 802.3 LAN cable to transmit messages to all the nodes on the network. The messages are then accepted only by the node or nodes to which they are addressed. Also includes the ThickLAN and StarLAN 10 options.

throughput class A value assigned to a given virtual circuit that defines how many network resources should be assigned to a given call. It is determined by the access line speed, packet and window sizes, and the local network's internal mechanisms.

# throughput class negotiation

One of the network subscribed facilities defined at subscription time. This allows the user to negotiate the throughput class at call set-up time.

**timer (T3)** Length of time that a link can remain in an idle state. After the expiration of the timer, the link is considered to be in a non-active, non-operational state and is automatically reset. The value should be chosen carefully. In particular, it must be sufficiently greater than the retransmission timer (T1) so that no doubt exists about the link's state.

**token ring** collection of data communication systems sharing a common cable and communicating by means of the IEEE 802.5 protocol. In a token ring network, access is controlled by the passing of a token from node to node. Outgoing messages are attached to the token and passed with the token until they arrive at the node to which they are addressed.

**Token Ring 3000/iX Network** 

**Link** Hardware and software required to connect a HP 3000 Series 900 system to a token ring network.

**topology** The physical arrangement of nodes in a network. Some common topologies are bus, star, and ring.

### transmission control protocol

TCP. A network protocol that establishes and maintains connections between nodes. TCP regulates the flow of data, breaks messages into smaller fragments if necessary (and reassembles the fragments at the destination), detects errors, and retransmits messages if errors have been detected.

**Transpac** The national public PSN of France.

**transparent mode** Data transfer scheme in which only a limited number of special characters retain their meaning and are acted on by the system. All other characters are considered to be data and are passed through with no control actions being taken.

**transport, network** Software that corresponds to layers 4 and 3 of the OSI network architecture model. The function of this software is to send data out over the appropriate communications link, to receive incoming data, and to route incoming or outgoing data to the appropriate destination node.

**Tymnet** A proprietary public data network in the USA.

**typeahead** A facility that allows terminal users to enter data before a read is actually posted to the terminal.

### U

unacknowledged frame number (K) The number of frames that can be transmitted without receiving an acknowledgment from the

destination address. When this number (K) frame is reached, the same K frames are retransmitted.

# unedited mode *See* transparent mode.

# V

**V.24** The CCITT recommendation that defines the function of the interchange circuits between a DTE and a DCE.

**validation** The process of ascertaining whether the network transport configuration file has been correctly configured. In guided NMMGR, you do this by pressing the Validate Netxport key.

**VAN** Value-added network. A data communication network that uses and pays for facilities belonging to another carrier. The value-added package is then sold to a user.

### VC See virtual circuit.

virtual circuit A logical association between two physically separate DTEs.

**virtual terminal** A network service that allows a user to establish interactive sessions on a node.

**VPLUS** Software used to generate screens such as those displayed by NMMGR.

V-Series (V.##) CCITT A set of CCITT recommendations related to data communication over a voice-grade telephone network.

# VT See virtual terminal.

# W

workstation configurator A utility (TTUTIL) that allows users to create customized terminal and printer types by entering data through a series of VPLUS screens.

# X

**X.3** Defines the user facilities that should be internationally available from the packet assembler/disassembler (PAD) facility when this is offered by a public data network.

**X.21** Defines the physical interface between a DTE and a DCE of a public data network where the access to the network is made over synchronous digital lines.

**X.25** Defines the interface between a DTE and a DCE for packet mode operation on a public data network (PDN).

**X.25 address** The X.25 address provided by the network administration if you are connected to a public data network (PDN).

**X.25 address key** An X.25 address key is a label that maps a node's IP address to its X.25

address and its associated X.25 parameters. You have a combined maximum of 1024 X.25 address keys in the SVC and PVC path tables.

**X.25 LUG address** X.25 address of a node belonging to a local user group (LUG).

### X.25 iX System Access The

software that works in conjunction with the DTC/X.25 Network Access software to provide access to X.25. The software resides on an HP 3000 host and is configured through use of NMMGR. To configure access to an X.25 network, you must configure two software components: the X.25 iX System Access (residing on the HP 3000 host), and the DTC/X.25 Network Access. DTC/X.25 Network Access is configured through use of the **OpenView DTC Manager** software for systems using PC-based network management or through NMMGR for systems using host-based network management.

**X.29** Defines the interface for data exchange between a packet-mode DTE and a remote packet assembly/disassembly (PAD) facility over a packet switching network.

#### XON/XOFF protocol Flow

control used by MPE/iX systems to protect against data overruns. XON/XOFF protocol is controlled by the data recipient who sends an XOFF character (ASCII DC3) to the sender if it is unable to continue to receive data. The sender suspends transmission until it receives an XON character (ASCII DC1).

# X.Series (X.##) CCITT

**recommendations** A set of recommendations for data communication networks governing their services, facilities, and the operation of terminal equipment and interfaces.

### A

activating logging, 193 activating NS, 195 add directory entry, 166 add nodes to the network directory, 166 adding a node to the directory, 166 additional address field, 172 additional domain name configuration files, 178 address key, 62, 143, 145 address resolution, 35 domain name services, 35 network directory, 35 address resolution protocol, 38 administrative node, 37 **ARP**, 38 assigning node name, 86 assigning subnet masks, 27

#### B

backup configuration file, 84, 163 backup configuration file name, 84

#### С

card number, 62, 142 central administrative node, 37 centralized network directory, 36 checksum for TCP, 170 classes of logging events, 180 command DSLINE, 199 DTCCNTRL, 196 MAKESTREAM, 37 **MERGEDIR**, 37, 167 NETCONTROL START, 193, 196 NETCONTROL STATUS, 198 **NETCONTROL STOP, 199** NSCONTROL START, 197 **NSCONTROL STATUS, 198** NSCONTROL STOP, 199 RESTORE, 37 STORE, 37 SWITCHNMLOG UPDATE, 193 communication between networks, 45 completing the internetwork table, 47 configuration administrative node, 37 domain name files, 173

logging, 179 configuration file, 82 configuration file name, 83, 163 configuration process, 20 configure direct connect/dial node mapping, 134 configure domain name resolver, 174 configure mapping direct connect/dial, 134 configure network directory, 164 configure node mapping, 131 configure path report data, 169 configure shared dial node mapping, 132 configured gateways, 77 configured reachable networks, 117, 118, 129, 130, 149, 150 configuring a gateway half, 151 configuring a gateway half pair, 33 configuring an X.25 node, 137 configuring domain name files. 173 configuring logging, 179 configuring the network directory, 161 console logging field, 182, 184, 185, 187, 188, 189 copying a network directory, 37 create network directory, 37 cross-validating in SYSGEN, 159

### D

decentralized network directory, 37 default gateway, 33, 117, 118, 127, 129, 130 default gateways, 115, 147 define directory entry, 166 design considerations, 22 destination IP address direct dial links, 135 non-dialed links, 135 shared dial links, 132, 133 dial link, 23, 26 direct connect, 153 direct dial, 153 disable route direct dial links, 136 non-dialed links, 136 shared dial links, 132, 134 disk logging field, 183, 184, 188, 190 domain keyword, 174

cross-validation, 20, 159

domain name configuration additional files, 178 overview, 173 domain name file configuration guidelines, 173 domain name resolver to configure, 174, 176 domain name services, 35 drawing a network map, 48 drawing an internetwork map, 44 DSLINE command, 199 DTC node name, 62, 139, 142 DTCCNTRL command, 196

#### Е

enable Ethernet, 62, 96, 109, 113 enable IEEE 802.3, 62 entering maintenance mode, 165 Ethernet, 96, 109, 113 event logging, 180 exit maintenance mode, 165

#### F

facility set, 62, 144 facility sets defined, 145 FDDI Configuration screen, 102 FDDI configuration worksheet, 70, 71, 72, 73 FDDI Link name, 64 field console logging, 182, 184, 185, 187, 188, 189 disk logging, 183, 184, 188, 190 fields NETXPORT Log Configuration screens, 182, 184, 185, 187, 189 NETXPORT Log configuration screens, 188 Full Duplex Mode, 66, 67 full gateway definition of, 31 full gateways versus gateway halves, 31

#### G

Gatehalf Configuration screen, 153 gateway configuration, 32 gateway half definition of, 31 gateway half map, 57 gateway half network interface table, 58 gateway half pair worksheet, 57 gateway name, 77, 116, 117, 128, 129, 148 gateway-half configuration, 33 gateways, 31 geographical location, 22 global field, 167 global network directory entries, 167 global/local flag, 167 Global?, 167

#### Н

home NI name, 154 hops, 79, 117, 129, 149, 150 host name data base file, 176 HOSTS.NET.SYS, 176

#### I

identifying neighbor gateways, 32 interface types, 25 internetwork, 31 internetwork map, 44 internetwork table, 47 internetwork worksheets, 44 **IP Address** network directory, 171 IP address, 63 definition of, 94, 99, 103, 107, 111, 124, 140 entering the gateway-half's partner's, 153 how to obtain, 95, 100, 104, 108, 112, 125, 141 LAN, 94, 99, 103, 107, 111, 124 X.25, 140 IP address field, 93, 98, 99, 102, 103, 106, 110, 123, 139 IP internet address, 79 IP mask, 79 neighbor gateway, 118, 130, 150 IP network address, 46, 117, 129, 149 neighbor gateway, 118, 130, 150 IP subnet mask, 63, 98, 102, 116, 117, 128, 129, 131, 149 100Base-T, 113 100VG-AnyLAN, 109 LAN, 96, 104, 126, 142 token ring, 100 IP subnets, 27

#### K

keyword domain, 174 nameserver, 175 search, 175 keywords resolver file, 174

#### L

LAN Configuration screen, 123 LAN configuration worksheet, 69 LAN internet routing table, 51 LAN Link name, 64 LAN network map, 49 LAN network worksheet, 49 LAN network worksheets, 49 leased line, 26 leaving maintenance mode, 165 line speed, 22 link manager logging, 193 link name, 64, 98, 102, 123, 139, 142gateway half, 155 LAN, 96, 105, 109, 113, 126 token ring, 100 Link Speed, 66, 67 link type gateway half, 155 link types, 25 Local domain name, 65 local entries uses of, 167 local network directory entries, 167 Local node name, 64 local node name, 85 logging classes, 180 logging configuration guidelines, 179 overview, 179

#### M

Main screen, 85 maint mode, 165 maintenance mode, 165 MAKESTREAM command, 37 map internetwork, 44 point-to-point network, 52 MERGEDIR command, 37, 167 merging network directory files, 37 modify logging configuration, 182 modify network directory, 37 modify the domain name resolver, 174 multicast request, 38 multiple network interfaces, 26

#### Ν

nameserver keyword, 175

neighbor gateway configuration worksheet, 78 neighbor gateway IP Internet Address X.25, 150 neighbor gateway IP internet address, 79, 117, 118, 129, 130 neighbor gateway reachable networks configuration worksheet, 79, 80 **Neighbor Gateway Reachable** Networks screen, 117, 129, 148 neighbor gateway worksheet information, 77 neighbor gateways, 32 defined, 115, 127, 147 Neighbor Gateways screen, 115, 127, 147 NETCONTROL START command, 193, 196 NETCONTROL STATUS command, 198 NETCONTROL STOP command, 199 NetIPC logging, 193 netowrk interface type priority, NETSAMP.NET.SYS, 178 network and internetwork design considerations, 22 network boundaries, 46 network boundary, 31, 46 network directory, 35, 161 centralized, 36 configure, 164 configuring from NMMGR, 36 copying, 37 data screen, 169 decentralized, 37 file structure, 37 for X.25 networks, 36 global entries, 167 local entries, 167 planning, 36 Select Node Name screen, 166 Network Directory Data screen, 169 network directory entry, 161 network directory file name, 163 Network Directory Main screen, 164 Network directory name, 65 network directory name X.25, 144

Network directory Select Node Name screen, 166 network directory worksheet, 59 network interface LAN, 89 Network Interface (NI) name, 65 network interface (NI) name X.25, 145 network interface name, 89 guidelines for using, 89 network interfaces, 25 network map, 48 network name, 89 LAN, 89 network name database, 178 network planning, 21 Network Services, 197 starting, 197 testing, 198 Network Transport Configuration screen, 88 network transport logging, 193 network type, 89 network worksheets, 49 NETWORKS.NET.SYS, 178 NETXPORT Log Configuration, 182 **NETXPORT Log Configuration** screens, 182 new global field, 168 new name, 77, 168 for directory node entry, 168 NI name, 89 LAN, 89 NI type, 89 NI type priority, 26 NMCBACK.group.account, 84, 163 NMCONFIG.PUB.SYS, 83, 163 NMMGR, 19, 20, 82 node name, 167 network directory, 167 node worksheet information, 62 nodes having multiple links, 131 nodes having single links, 131 non-HP 3000 nodes, 23 NS Configuration screen, 87 NS validation test, 198 NSCONTROL START command, 197 NSCONTROL STATUS command, 198 NSCONTROL STOP command, 199 NSDIR.NET.SYS, 84, 163 number of LAN links, 25 number of network interfaces, 25

number of point-to-point links, 26 number of token ring links, 25 number of X.25 links, 26

#### 0

offline configuration file, 83, 163 Open Configuration/Directory file screen, 162 open network directory file, 37 operating the network, 195 overview of configuration, 20

#### Р

partner's IP address, 153, 154 partner's IP subnet mask, 154 PASSWORD command, 84 path report data, 169 PDN, 144 Permanent VC number, 65 permanent VC number, 144, 146 permanent virtual circuit, 143, 144, 146 phone number direct dial links, 135 gateway half, 155 shared dial links, 132, 133, 136 Physical path, 65 physical path gateway half, 155 point-to-point, 126 Physical path of device adapter, 66 physical path of FDDI device adapter, 105 Physical path of LANIC, 66 Physical path of Token Ring device adapter, 66 physical path of token ring device adapter, 101 physicall path of LANIC, 96, 109, 113 planning the network directory, 36 point-to-point configuration worksheet, 74 point-to-point internet routing table, 53 Point-to-Point Link name, 64 point-to-point network map, 52 point-to-point network table, 53 point-to-point network worksheet, 52 print dir, 165 print network directory, 165 priority direct dial links, 135, 136 non-dialed links, 135, 136

shared dial, 132, 133 priority of network interfaces, 26 probe, 38 probe protocol, 38 probe request, 38 programmable serial interface, 126 protocol name database, 178 PROTOCOL.NET.SYS, 178 PROTSAM.NET.SYS, 178 proxy probe, 38 Proxy node, 67 proxy node, 96, 109, 113 proxy server, 38 PSI, 126 public data network, 144 PVC, 143, 146 PVC number, 144 **PVC** parameters, 145 PXP field network directory, 170

#### Ģ

QVALNS.NET.SYS, 198

#### R

redirect output, 165 Remote IP address, 67 remote IP address, 143, 144 Remote node name, 67 remote node name, 143, 144 Remote X.25 address, 67 remote X.25 address, 144, 145 **RESLVCNF.NET.SYS**, 174 resolver file, 174 resolver file keywords, 174 **RESTORE** command, 37 route name defined, 133 direct dial links, 135 non-dialed links, 135 shared dial links, 133 routename shared dial links, 132

#### S

search keyword, 175 Security class, 68 security string direct dial links, 135, 136 gateway half, 155 shared dial links, 132, 134 service name database, 178 SERVICES.NET.SYS, 178 SERVSAM.NET.SYS, 178

# Index

shared dial link, 23 limitations, 23 shut down Network Services, 199 shutting down NS, 199 Speed, 68 speed line, 22 point-to-point, 126 starting a host-based X.25 link, 196 starting a link, 196 starting links and services, 196 starting network services, 197 starting NS, 197 starting software loopback, 196 stop Network Services, 199 STORE command, 37 subnet masks assigning, 27 determining, 28 subnetworks, 27 SVC, 143 SVC parameters, 145 switched virtual circuit, 143 SWITCHNMLOG UPDATE command, 193 SYSGEN facility use for cross-validation, 159

#### Т

TCP checksum, 170 TCP field network directory, 170 testing Network Services, 198 to access the logging configuration screens, 181 to activate logging, 193 to add nodes to the network directory, 166 to configure a 100VG-AnyLAN network interface, 106 to configure a gatehalf network interface, 153 to configure a LAN network interface, 93, 110 to configure a point-to-point network interface, 123 to configure a token ring network, 98 to configure an FDDI network, 102to configure an X.25 network interface, 139 to configure direct connect/dial node mapping, 134 to configure neighbor gateways, 115, 127, 147

to configure path report data for a node, 169 to configure shared dial node mapping, 132 to configure the domain name resolver, 174 to configure the hosts file, 176 to configure X.25 virtual circuits, 142 to draw a network map, 48 to enable users for individual logging classes, 191 to enter maintenance mode, 165 to exit maintenance mode, 165 to identify neighbor gateway reachable networks, 117, 148 to identify neighbor gateways, 115, 127, 147 to modify the domain name resolver, 174 to modify the hosts file, 176 to modify the logging configuration, 182 to open the configuration file, 82 to perform guided network transport configuration LAN, 88 to select guided configuration, 87 to select NS configuration, 85 to select the update directory function, 164 to shut down Network Services, 199 to start a host-based X.25 link, 196 to start a link, 196 to start links and services, 196 to start network services, 197 to start NMMGR, 82 to start software loopback, 196 to test Network Services, 198 Token Ring Configuration screen, 98 token ring configuration worksheet, 70 Token Ring Link name, 64 transmission speed gateway half, 155 transport services, 170 **Type**, 68 type network directory data, 171

## U

update dir, 164 update network directory, 164 Use Auto-Negotiation, 67 users enabled for logging, 192 uses of local entries, 167

#### V

validate network transport, 20, 158 Virtual Circuit Configuration screen, 142

#### W

worksheet gateway half pair, 57 worksheets internetwork, 44 LAN network, 49 write access password, 84, 163

### X

X.25 Configuration screen, 139
X.25 configuration worksheet, 75
X.25 internet routing table, 56
X.25 Link name, 64
X.25 network

network directory, 36
X.25 network map, 55
X.25 network table, 56
X.25 network worksheet, 55
X.25 virtual circuit configuration

worksheet, 76